Sarah Jane Lewis

GRAMMAR PLUS

ENGLISH GRAMMAR
REFERENCE AND PRACTICE





Contents

1	to be: Short answers; There is / There are	4
2	a / an; Plurals; Demonstratives	7
3	the	10
4	one / ones	13
5	Object pronouns, Possessive adjectives and pronouns	14
6	Present simple of have (got) for possession; Expressions with to have	17
7	Present simple and adverbs of frequency	20
8	Adjectives and nouns of nationality; Time / Dates	23
9	Direct and indirect objects; Word order	26
10	Present continuous	28
11	must, have to, can, could, be able to, should, need, may, might	32
12	Prepositions of place	35
13	Prepositions of time	38
14	Prepositions of movement	41
15	Imperative	44
16	Countable and uncountable nouns; Collective nouns; Compound nouns	47
17	some, any, a few, a little, few, little, no, none	50
18	much, many, a lot (of), too, so (that), How questions	53
19	other(s), another, else; every, each; all, whole; both, either, neither	56
20	Genitive form with 's; whose	59
21	Reflexive pronouns; each other; one another; get + adjectives	61
22	Comparatives and superlatives of adjectives	64
23	Comparatives / Superlatives with nouns and verbs; less, fewer; the least, the fewest; as as	68
24	Past simple to be	71
25	Past simple	74
26	Past continuous	78
27	Present perfect simple	81
28	Present perfect continuous; Present perfect tenses with for and since	85
29	Present perfect simple or Past simple	88
30	Past perfect, Past perfect or Past simple?	90

31	Future simple; Future with going to	92
32	Relative clauses	95
33	Question words; Exclamations	98
34	Conditionals	100
35	Question tags	103
36	Verbs of sensory perception	105
37	The -ing form (gerund) after prepositions and certain expressions	107
38	Gerund (-ing form) / Infinitive	109
39	Reported speech	112
40	Passives	115

to be: Short answers; There is / There are

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE		INTERROGATIVE	NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE
l am	l'm	I am not	I'm not	Am I?	Am I not?
You are	You're	You are not	You're not / You aren't	Are you?	Aren't you?
He is	He's	He is not	He's not / He isn't	Is he?	Isn't he?
She is	She's	She is not	She's not / She isn't	Is she?	Isn't she?
It is	It's	It is not	It's not / It isn't	Is it?	Isn't it?
We are	We're	We are not	We're not / We aren't	Are we?	Aren't we?
You are	You're	You are not	You're not / You aren't	Are you?	Aren't you?
They are	They're	They are not	They're not / They aren't	Are they?	Aren't they?

Short answers

To form the short answer we repeat the subject pronoun and the verb, after Yes or No.

- A Is she tired?
- B Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.
- A Are they students at the university?
- B Yes, they are. / No they're not.

There is / There are

When we want to say something exists, begin the sentence with there + be + noun phrase.

There is a blackbird in the garden.

There aren't any forks in the kitchen drawer.

Is there a printer in the office?

There are many trees in the park.

Are there any tickets left?

Note!

Why do we use there is / there are?

English sentences do not usually begin with an indefinite noun phrase. E.g. A vase is on the table. Instead, we prefer to begin the sentence with there +be and put the indefinite subject after be.

Remember the sentence structure with question words:

Question word + verb + subject

Where the TV remote? is How your grandparents? are

1	Choose the correct	form of	the verb	to be to	complete	the sentences
---	--------------------	---------	----------	----------	----------	---------------

1	Francis	my friend.	5	My son	eight and my daughter
2	Sam and Mark	brothers, they		1	ten. Theyat
	are cousins.			junior sch	ool now.
3	Α	they French?	6	I	not very confident at playing
	B No, they	They		sport.	
	Spanish.		7	Where	the children?
4	Α	Joanne very hungry?	8	Paul	not very tall.
	B No, I don't t	hink she is.			

2		order the words to make sentences using the		
	1	we / to / going / aren't / today / the beach /? Aren't we going to the beach today?	5	cold / she / wearing / isn't / just / a T-shirt / ?
	2	playing / they / in the play / the main roles / are	6	not / raining / is / very much / it / anymore
	3	well / not / feeling / is / today / he / very	7	you / better / the operation / looking / are / after
	4	a bus / you / taking / to the airport / are / ?	8	cinema / they / to / tonight / the / are / going / ?
3	Ch	ange these affirmative sentences into the nega	tive and	interrogative forms.
	1	She is a nice woman.	4	You are very organised.
		She isn't a nice woman.		<u> </u>
		Is she a nice woman?		?
	2	They are firemen.	5	It is cold outside this evening.
		?		?
	3	He is always on time for swimming lessons.	6	She is a computer programmer.
		?		?
4	2	Listen and complete the dialogue.		
		n Excuse me. Is this seat taken?	Juan	Just some friends from university. We're
		thy No, go ahead and sit down.	W-4h	doing some research for a project.
	Jua	n Thanks. My name's Juan, by the way. (1) 's yours?	Kathy	(4) are those sketches? They're really good.
		thy Oh hi! Nice to meet you. I'm Kathy.	Juan	Thanks! They're mine. I'm drawing some
	Jua	n That's an unusual accent. (2)	W-4b	pictures of the famous paintings here.
		are you from?		(5) do you study?
	Ka	thy I'm from Bristol, in the UK. I'm here on holiday. And you?	Juan	Art and design. That sounds cool.
	lus	in I'm from Portugal.	Juan	
		thy (3) are you here with?	Kathy	
	ıνα	are you here with:	Katily	Bye!
5		mplete the beginning of the sentences with the control of the sentences with the control of the	ie corre	ct question words: what, why,
	1	colour is your hair?	5	jumper is this?
	2	much is an ice cream?	6	are you crying?
			72	
	3	is that short man over	7	are your hobbies?
	3	there?	8	are your hobbies? dress do you prefer: the

6	Match the short answers (a-f) with the questions. 1 Is Maxine going to the Halloween party? 2 Are you in my Science class? 3 Are Emma and Jason singing in the school concert 4 Are you and Jeffrey going out for pizza? 5 Is Michael speaking to you online now? 6 Is that your car parked in the street?	a Yes, they are. b No, he isn't. c No, she isn't. d Yes, it is. e Yes, I am. f No, we're not.
7	Write short answers to the following questions. 1 Are you wearing jeans today? Yes, I am. / No. I'm not. 2 Are you a member of the athletics team?	 Is your best friend a good singer? Are your mother and father at work right
	Are you going to Birmingham next week? Are your grandparents having dinner at your house tonight?	now? 7 Is your school near the sea? 8 Is it your birthday today?
8	Fill in the gaps using there is or there are. 1 twenty students in my language class. 2 five members in my favourite band. 3 a beautiful sculpture in my next-door neighbour's garden.	 4 a few buses waiting at the station, but none are the right bus for me. 5 only one egg left in the fridge. 6 I like my town centre two cinemas, a bowling alley and lots of great shops.
9	Write sentences about the pictures using there is or to	there are. Write ONE sentence for each picture.

a / an; Plurals; Demonstratives

The indefinite articles a and an come before:

- a singular countable noun a man, an idea
- modifiers + a singular countable noun
 a happy girl, a very famous person, an interesting book

When to use a: when to use an:

- We use a before a consonant sound (even if the first letter is a vowel). a dog, a girl, a horse, a unit, a European, a doctor, a nice picture
- We use an before a vowel sound (even if the first letter is a consonant).

 an address, an hour, an assistant, an actor, an ugly boy, an honest person

A / an has no plural form. Instead, we use either no word or some.

Plurals

We use the plural to indicate more than one person or thing. Pay attention to the following spelling rules:

- The regular plural form of a noun adds -s or -es.
 book → books school → schools cup → cups uncle → uncles week → weeks
- Most nouns add -s, but if the noun already ends in -s or -sh, -o, -z, -ch or -x we add -es. $kiss \rightarrow kisses$ $wish \rightarrow wishes$ $tomato \rightarrow tomatoes$ $watch \rightarrow watches$ $box \rightarrow boxes$
- A small number of nouns have a special form. If the noun ends in a consonant and -y, we must take away the -y and add -ies.

baby → babies party → parties

Many words that end in -f or -fe change to -ves in the plural.
 leaf → leaves wife → wives

This, these, that and those are called demonstratives.

This and **these** are used to indicate things that are close. **This** is for singular words and **these** is for plural words.

This is my book. These are my books.

That and **those** are used to talk about things that are far away. **That** is for singular words and **those** is for plural words.

That is my dog over there. Those are my friends at the end of the street.

Note!

This, *these*, *that* and *those* are words which 'point' to things, people etc. near to or far from the speaker. *This*, *these*, *that* and *those* are also determiners (followed by a noun or by *onelones*):

This pen is hers.

These blue hats are nicer than those ones.

Those books are interesting.

That car is faster than this one.

1 Write a or an in front of the following words.

1	angry man.	7	interesting story.
2	open window.	8	can of fizzy drink.
3	English lesson.	9	unusual animal.
4	nose.	10	argument.
5	door.	11	smartphone.
6	uniform.	12	old laptop.

2		Rewrite the following sentences putting the vursars answers.	words	s in the correct order. Then listen and check
	1	apple / always / after / eat / I / breakfast / an / always eat an apple after breakfast.	4	Italy / country / is / a / sunny
	2	bought / book / my brother / an / about elephants / interesting	5	Max / fantastic / had / party / birthday / a
	3	singer / saw / a / in town / Maryanne / famous	6	packed lunch / I / a / usually / take / to school
3	Co	mplete the sentences with the correct indefinite	artic	section stretcher (Author 1970 - 1970
	1	I'd like <u>a</u> bottle of water and some chocolate.	6	8 ,
	2	The printer has run out of ink. He is vegetarian, you can't eat	7	can dive off the top diving board into the pool.
	3	meat at his house.	,	I'd like to buy computer but the one I like is expensive model.
	4	My neighbour is photographer.	8	
		Let's ask him to takeshot of us.	9	2/27 707 2
	5	person who suffers from		lunch tomorrow night.
		claustrophobia does not like being	10	
		insmall spaces.		French.
4	Ch	ange these sentences to the plural form.		
	1	A dog is an animal.	5	A writer writes a book.
	2	A potato is a vegetable.	6	A garden usually has a bush.
	3	A leaf fell off the tree.	7	A party is a fun way to celebrate your birthday.
	4	A pencil is like a pen.	8	A wish is a special dream.
5	Re	write the following sentences in the plural form	ı .	
	1	This giraffe is taller than that tiger.	5	This is a sad film.
	2	This house is bigger than that one.	6	That goat escaped from the field.
	3	This is a tasty cake.	7	This is a bicycle and that is a motorbike.

0	Underline the correct answer to complete the	sentences.
	1 Are these / this your trainers? I found them	5 These / This are my notes I took in class.
	in the changing room.	6 No, this / that isn't my coat over there by
	2 That / Those bread is out-of-date. Throw it	the front door. Mine is blue.
	in the bin.	7 Those / That are my cakes on the table
	3 What do you think of these / those earrings	which I baked for the charity bake sale.
	over there?	8 Hello everyone! I'm Jonathan and that / this
	4 This / These exercise is easy.	is my friend, Alicia.
7	Which sentence do you hear? Listen and	d choose either a or b.
	1 a \square This is a photo of my family.	b \square That is a photo of my family.
	2 a \square I don't like this mushroom.	b \square I don't like these mushrooms.
	3 a \sum How did you find these gloves?	b
	4 a That is a big room.	b \square This is a big room.
	5 a \subseteq I'm going to read this book on holiday.	$\mathbf{b} \square \mathbf{l}$ 'm going to read these books on holiday.
	6 a These jeans over there are really cheap	b. \Box Those jeans over there are really cheap.
	7 a This watch is expensive.	b These watches are expensive.
	8 a \square Are these seats taken?	b \square Are those seats taken?
0	(5)	
8	Listen to the questions and choose the co	
	1 a They're from Germany.	b \square There from Germany.
	2 a \square Yes, it is.	b 🗌 Yes, they are.
	3 a \square No, we aren't.	$\mathbf{b} \square$ Yes, they are.
	4 a They're very nice.	b \square Put them by the door over there.
	5 a \square Yes, I like.	b ☐ Yes, I do.
9	Correct the mistakes in the following sentence	es.
•	97, 2748 2749K AV-CS 13 5 6 AC	
	1 I am doing an unit in my exercise book.	6 We don't need to wear an uniform to school.
	I am doing a unit in my exercise book.	- u
	2 Those is a great car.	7 My sister is coming in a hour.
	3 My favourite snack is apples.	These exercises is helpful.
	4 Is this my memory stick over there?	9 Put the knifes and forks on the table, please.

the

We use **the** when we are talking about something specific or something we have mentioned before. We place **the** before a noun phrase to show that it has definite meaning. This means that the speaker and the hearer share knowledge about exactly what the speaker is talking about.

Brian wants the action, adventure DVD. I want the jumper you showed me before.

The goes before a noun, and also before any adjectives or other words which describe the noun.

the + noun	the + adjective + noun	the + number + noun	
the tigers	the scary tigers	the four tigers	

When we are talking in general terms we do not use the.

Rabbits are faster than turtles. [Which rabbits? Rabbits in general.]

Italians love to eat well. [Which Italians? Italians in general.]

We use the:

- before things that are unique *The moon, the past...*
- when we are talking in specific terms
 The man I saw yesterday was Tom's father. [Which man? The man I saw yesterday.]
 Where are the children? [Which children? The ones I'm looking for.]
- before some words which imply that they are the only one: superlatives, ordinals, (the) same, only.
 They are all good basketball players, but Mark is the best.

What time is the last flight to Paris?

I'm the same height as Andrew.

These are the only trainers I have.

Always use the:

- after to play + name of an instrument. She plays the piano.
- before family names. The Smiths
- before the names of rivers and seas. the Rhine, the Atlantic.
- with some countries. the USA, the Netherlands, the UK.
- when referring to well-known or well-defined groups of people.
 the police, the sick, the famous

Never use the:

- after to play + name of a game / before the name of a sport or game.
 He's playing football at the moment.
- in front of titles + proper noun. Captain Hook
- before the names of lakes and single mountains. Lake Michigan, Kilimanjaro.
- before most countries that are singular. Italy.
- to refer to meals. What's for dinner?

Note!

The contrasts with the 'indefinite article' a or an.

The always has the same form before singular and plural nouns, or before countable and uncountable nouns. Contrast **the** and **a**:

	Countable: Singular	Plural	Uncountable
Definite	the clown	the clowns	the money
Indefinite	a clown	clowns	money

1	Ins	sert the where necessary to complete the sen	tences.		
	1	life is very easy for them at the	10	This is	fastest car I've ever
		moment.		driven.	
	2	oranges I bought were very	11	Does she play	piano well?
		cheap.	12	sun	was shining in
	3	We went to a Chinese restaurant last night		sky.	
		andfood was excellent.	13		only pair of sunglasses
	4	They playfootball very well.		I own.	
	5	The party was fun but I didn't enjoy	14	I buy '	Times' newspaper every
		music.		Saturday.	
	6	I don't like the smell of	15		day inJune.
		Brussels sprouts.	16		er boils at 100° C.
	7	They don't believe in ghosts.	17		ifficult to find
	8	I was first person down for			things you like.
		breakfast this morning.	18	THE STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PARTY OF THE PARTY.	Japan and
	9	He dropped glass on		USA	
		floor.			
2	6	Write centences using the words given. Th	on listor	and check your	anewore
_	1	Write sentences using the words given. The furniture / your house / beautiful	ien iistei 6		
	1		ь	parks / my city /	Deautiful
	,	The furniture in your house is beautiful.	-	athar / tadaul	/ minn
	2	where / sugar?	7	weather / today!	7 nice
	3	glasses / table / his	8	my brother / siste	r-in-law / Amsterdam / live
	4	where / teachers?	9	students / classro	oom / in
	5	for you / fruit and vegetables / healthy	10	smaller fish / sha	arks / eat
		3		-	
3	Co	rrect the following sentences, if necessary.			
	1	What do you usually have for breakfast?	6	Mum is listening	to music and Dad is in the
	-	Correct		garden.	to music and Dad is in the
	2	Do you watch news every day?		Baraem	
	U. 5.0	Do you mater news every day.	7	The fizzy drinks	in the fridge are really cold.
	3	I love cakes, but cakes my wife makes are	•	The nery drinks	in the mage are really cola.
	~	really special.	8	The birds love to	eat the seeds
		really special.	·	The birds love to	cut the secus.
	4	When I was a child I visited the France, the	9	I have some mea	t and fish in the fridge. The
	1	Germany, and the Netherlands.	11.5	meat is fine, but	1일 (100) 100 (100 (100) 100 (100) 100 (100) 100 (100) 100 (100) 100 (100) 100 (100) 100 (100) 100 (100) 100 (10
		,,			nerment (13.112.41.11.113.11.113.13).
	5	Sweaters in that shop are expensive.	10	I enjoy the tennis	but I prefer playing cards.
	1,452		• •		6 6)9 saids.
				-	

4 Write sentences using the definite article. Use the words below and any other words if necessary.

1	Mike / took trip / to USA Mike took a trip to the USA.	5	When / start / mara	athon race / ?
2	Paul and Hannah / in / same class	6	Where / papers / h	ad / on my desk / ?
3	Megan / plays / keyboard	7	These / jeans / only	y / ones / fit me
4	Louise / went / boat ride / on River Thames	8	Police / have / imp	ortant job
5 I	nsert a, an or the, if necessary.			
1	children loveice	10	birds c	an fly very high in
	cream.		sky.	
2	vegetables are healthy.	11	There is	_fly in my glass of water.
3	I want glass of milk.	12	Take u	mbrella with you to
4	door of garage is		office.	It looks like rain.
	broken.	13	We had	_meal atnev
5	Can you play violin?		restaurant	last night.
6	Do you prefer romantic book or	14	I am fond of	
	book about adventures?		lemon.	
7	Jack and Jill went up hill to get	15		oversea are
	bucket of water.		looking very grey.	
8	He took up swimming as hobby	16	It is nice to play	game of
	last year.			on summer
9	butcher opposite		afternoon.	7584 ;
	library always sells good meat.			

6 Correct the following passage. Where necessary, delete the.

I like the tennis. I'm also very good at the swimming, but I don't like the swimming pools very much because there are always too many people there. But the swimming pool near our house is very nice. I often go there on the Saturday mornings. I meet my friends and we have the lunch at the cafeteria after we swim. I usually have a sandwich. There is also a big glass window in the cafeteria, and you can watch the swimmers while you eat.



one / ones

^	1000 to 100 W			THE RESERVE OF THE RE	
()ne	and	ones	are	nsed	١

- when we want to emphasise the fact that we mean one in number She's got one car, not two.
- with the words another and other(s)
 Would you like another one?
- with the words morning, evening, night etc. when you mean on a certain
 I woke up one morning and discovered my hair was starting to turn grey.
- to avoid repeating the countable noun She's got lots of books. Why don't you ask her if you can borrow one.
- A Look at those shoes.
- B Which ones?
- A The ones with the funny heels.

	Complete the sentences with (the) one or (the) o 1 Here are two pens. Which is		A Which sofa is the most expensive?
	yours?	-	B over there.
	B blue .	5	A Which of these books did you like the
	2 A Which earrings do you like?		best?
	B in the window.		B about the city of Paris.
	3 A Which suitcase are you going to buy?	6	A Which socks are mine?
	B This It seems to be a	U	B in that pile.
	good		
2	Replace the underlined words with one or ones.		
	1 This pizza was good but the pizza I ate last	5	My car is quite old now. I'm thinking of
	week was better.		buying a new <u>car</u> .
	This pizza was good but the one I ate		, , _
	last week was better.		
	2 I like your glasses. Which glasses? Your	6	Which apples should we get? Let's get some
	sunglasses.		red apples and some green apples.
	3 I would like an ice cream. A big ice cream	7	Which types of crisps would you like? The
	with chocolate sauce on top.	,	cheese and onion <u>crisps</u> or the ready salted <u>crisps</u> .
	4 I like this dress but I prefer to wear the		
	other <u>dress</u> .	8	Have you finished your lessons for today?
			No, I've got another lesson after lunch.

Object pronouns, Possessive adjectives and pronouns

SUBJECT PRONOUNS	OBJECT PRONOUNS	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES	POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS
ı	me	my	mine
you	you	your	yours
he	him	his	his
she	her	her	hers
it	it	its	<i>-</i>
we	us	our	ours
you	you	your	yours
they	them	their	theirs

Object pronouns are used as direct and/or indirect objects of the verb.

Max and Jenny are nice friends. I really like them. Can you pass me the sugar, please?

Possessive adjectives and **possessive pronouns** are used to say that something belongs to, or is connected with, another person or thing.

Possessives:

- are never used with an article
 It is my book. [not: the my book.]
- have the same form in the singular and the plural Her friend is from Portugal. Her friends are from Portugal.
- agree with the possessor, not with the object possessed Tony and his sister. Jenny and her husband.

1 Read the first sentence, then complete the second one with an object pronoun.

- That is a very nice car. I like <u>it</u>.
 Eric has some good friends. We like
- 3 Pedro is a good roommate. I like
- 4 Simon and James are interesting people.

 Let's invite to the party.
- 5 Laura has a job interview with a big company. I think they will give _____ the job.
- 6 There's the *dictionary*, it's under your desk. Do you need ?
- 7 I don't understand this question. Could you help ?
- 8 We are really late for school. Can you give a lift in the car?

- 9 Harry talks about you a lot. I think he likes
- 10 Mr Carmichael is a good teacher. We need at our school.



	1	I see my grandfather every day. I see him every day.	6	My daughter loves her piano lessons.
	2	I live with my father and mother.	·	
	_		7	I don't like the smell of coffee.
	3	Can you do this exercise?		w - H - H - H - H - H - H - H - H - H -
	4	Julia, can you show Emma and me how to	8	We will send Kathy and you an email.
		make cupcakes?	9	He always writes to my cousin and me.
	5	?		-
	3	She enjoys spending time with <u>your sister</u> .	10	I borrowed some money from <u>Tony</u> .
3	Fil	l in the gaps with an appropriate possessive ac	ljectivo	e.
	1	He took off his coat.	6	I have a pain in shoulder.
	2	Why are you standing with hands in your pockets?	7	Yvonne fell down the stairs and twisted ankle.
	3	He took off shoes and socks.	8	We can never find keys!
	4	Is the woman in the green dress wife?	9	
	5	The children put books in rucksacks.	10	I saw Lucy walking to school with younger brother.
4	Re	place the underlined words with possessive pr	onoun	s.
	1	Is this your money?yours	7	That's not <u>Julia's suitcase</u> . <u>Julia's suitcase</u> is
	2	Are these my sunglasses?		much heavier.
	3	It's their football, not our football.	8	I didn't have any paper so Andrea gave me
	4	His presentation was better than her		some of her paper.
	_	presentation.	9	Are those <u>our pens?</u> No, those are <u>my pens</u> .
	5	These aren't my headphones. They're your	10	Your pens are over here.
	6	headphones! My parents are very well. How are your parents?	10	Our house is not as big as their house but our house is more elegant than their house.
5	Un	derline the correct possessive form.		
	1	It's my / mine painting, not your / yours.	6	Is this MP3 player your / yours?
	2	That's not my / mine coffee cup. My / Mine	7	I love going to her I hers house.
	/323	is in the kitchen.	8	It was our / ours letter not your / yours.
	3	Her I Hers hair is longer than my I mine but my I mine hair is thicker than her I hers.	9	A Is that their I theirs car parked over there? B No, their I theirs is in the garage.
	4	Your I Yours homework is better than him I his.	10	A Where are our I ours new Blu-rays?
	5	They know our I ours email address but we don't know their I theirs.		B I left them in my I mine car.

	possessive pronoun. Then listen and check.		That's John aver there has all the table
1	sister likes telling jokes, but isn't as funny as	6	That's John over there, but who's that with
2	Where is my jumper? I thought I put	7	? A What do want?
_	inwardrobe.	,	B We want you to come with .
3	I've gottennis racket but Tom		A Is that Sarah's bicycle?
3	can't find	•	B No, it's not .
1	A How are?	٥	The Williams are going on holiday and taking
•	B Great, thanks.	,	children with them.
5	Can you help please?	10	I like Mark, butdoesn't like
,	can't reach that book on the top shelf.	10	Tilke Mark, but doesn't like
Co	omplete the email with the correct possessive ad	jectives	s or pronouns and subject or object pronouns
(
9			
	To: jess26@mail.com		
	Subject: Hello!		
	Hi Jessica,		
	Hi Jessica, What are (1) up to? Did you get (2) me (3) on Friday afternoon. (4) with the team. (5) have a match on Mor spoken to Laura? (6) is so busy lately st but it's quite tough. My brother has a new job! (8) morning. How is (9) job going? Oh, by	nday aga tudying t	inst Banbury School. I hope we win! Have you for her driving test. She enjoys (7), 's in Oxford, so he has to travel every
	Hi Jessica, What are (1) up to? Did you get (2) me (3) on Friday afternoon. (4) with the team. (5) have a match on Mor spoken to Laura? (6) is so busy lately st	nday aga tudying t	inst Banbury School. I hope we win! Have you for her driving test. She enjoys (7), 's in Oxford, so he has to travel every
	Hi Jessica, What are (1) up to? Did you get (2) me (3) on Friday afternoon. (4) with the team. (5) have a match on Mor spoken to Laura? (6) is so busy lately st but it's quite tough. My brother has a new job! (8) morning. How is (9) job going? Oh, by	nday aga tudying t	inst Banbury School. I hope we win! Have you for her driving test. She enjoys (7), 's in Oxford, so he has to travel every
	Hi Jessica, What are (1) up to? Did you get (2) me (3) on Friday afternoon. (4) with the team. (5) have a match on Mor spoken to Laura? (6) is so busy lately st but it's quite tough. My brother has a new job! (8) morning. How is (9) job going? Oh, by receive (10) ?	nday aga tudying t	inst Banbury School. I hope we win! Have you for her driving test. She enjoys (7), 's in Oxford, so he has to travel every
Ĉ(c	Hi Jessica, What are (1) up to? Did you get (2) me (3) on Friday afternoon. (4) with the team. (5) have a match on Mor spoken to Laura? (6) is so busy lately st but it's quite tough. My brother has a new job! (8) morning. How is (9) job going? Oh, by receive (10)? Speak soon! Georgia Direct the following sentences if necessary. I love yours jacket.	nday aga tudying t	inst Banbury School. I hope we win! Have you for her driving test. She enjoys (7), 's in Oxford, so he has to travel every y, I sent you some photos yesterday. Did you
ı	Hi Jessica, What are (1) up to? Did you get (2) me (3) on Friday afternoon. (4) with the team. (5) have a match on Mor spoken to Laura? (6) is so busy lately st but it's quite tough. My brother has a new job! (8) morning. How is (9) job going? Oh, by receive (10)? Speak soon! Georgia Prrect the following sentences if necessary. I love your jacket. I love your jacket.	tudying the wa	inst Banbury School. I hope we win! Have you for her driving test. She enjoys (7),,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	Hi Jessica, What are (1) up to? Did you get (2) me (3) on Friday afternoon. (4) with the team. (5) have a match on Mor spoken to Laura? (6) is so busy lately st but it's quite tough. My brother has a new job! (8) morning. How is (9) job going? Oh, by receive (10)? Speak soon! Georgia Direct the following sentences if necessary. I love yours jacket.	nday aga tudying t	inst Banbury School. I hope we win! Have you for her driving test. She enjoys (7), 's in Oxford, so he has to travel every y, I sent you some photos yesterday. Did you
	Hi Jessica, What are (1) up to? Did you get (2) me (3) on Friday afternoon. (4) with the team. (5) have a match on Mor spoken to Laura? (6) is so busy lately st but it's quite tough. My brother has a new job! (8) morning. How is (9) job going? Oh, by receive (10)? Speak soon! Georgia Direct the following sentences if necessary. I love yours jacket. I love your jacket. Jacob and I live in Denmark. Our house is	tudying the wa	inst Banbury School. I hope we win! Have you for her driving test. She enjoys (7), 's in Oxford, so he has to travel every y, I sent you some photos yesterday. Did you Katie has a computer. Her computer is very old Who are them? We have never seen their
	Hi Jessica, What are (1) up to? Did you get (2) me (3) on Friday afternoon. (4) with the team. (5) have a match on Mor spoken to Laura? (6) is so busy lately st but it's quite tough. My brother has a new job! (8) morning. How is (9) job going? Oh, by receive (10)? Speak soon! Georgia Prrect the following sentences if necessary. I love your jacket. I love your jacket. Jacob and I live in Denmark. Our house is small.	tudying the wa	Katie has a computer. Her computer is very old Who are them? We have never seen their before.
	Hi Jessica, What are (1) up to? Did you get (2) me (3) on Friday afternoon. (4) with the team. (5) have a match on Mor spoken to Laura? (6) is so busy lately st but it's quite tough. My brother has a new job! (8) morning. How is (9) job going? Oh, by receive (10)? Speak soon! Georgia Direct the following sentences if necessary. I love your jacket. Jacob and I live in Denmark. Our house is small. Hers bags are there. Can you get it for her?	tudying the war	Katie has a computer. Her computer is very old Who are them? We have never seen their before. He ate all his food. I hope we win! Have you for her driving test. She enjoys (7),,,,,,

Present Simple of *have (got)* for possession; Expressions with *to have*

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	SHORT FORM	INTERROGATIVE	NEGATIVE -INTERROGATIVE
I have (got)	I have not got	I haven't (got)	Have I (got)?	Haven't I (got)?
You have (got)	You have not got	You haven't (got)	Have you (got)?	Haven't you (got)?
He has (got)	He has not got	He hasn't (got)	Has he (got)?	Hasn't he (got)?
She has (got)	She has not got	She hasn't (got)	Has she (got)	Hasn't she (got)?
It has (got)	It has not got	It hasn't (got)	Has it (got)?	Hasn't it (got)?
We have (got)	We have not got	We haven't (got)	Have we (got)?	Haven't we (got)?
You have (got)	You have not got	You haven't (got)	Have you (got)?	Haven't you (got)?
They have (got)	They have not got	They haven't (got)	Have they (got)?	Haven't they (got)?

have (got)

have + got indicates possession. The meaning does not change if you do not use got.

I've got a camera. = I have a camera.

He's got a sister. = He has a sister.

When the negative and interrogative forms are formed with do / does + have, we omit got.

I haven't got a car. = I don't have a car.

When we use short answers, we never use got.

A Has she got children?

B Yes, she has. / No, she hasn't.

Expressions with to have

There are many expressions that use *to have* as the main verb. They use *do/does/did* etc. because in these cases, *to have* does not indicate possession.

Does she have her breakfast every morning at 7.00 a.m?

To have is also used in the continuous tenses.

Listen to the noise! I think they are having a party.

We use to have with nouns referring to:

washing to have a bath, a shower, a wash...
disagreeing to have a fight, an argument...

eating to have breakfast, lunch, dinner, a snack, a picnic, a meal...

relaxation and recreation to have a party, a holiday, a rest, fun...

talking to have a conversation, a talk, a discussion...

1	Choose the correct form of have + got to complete the sentences. Use has got, have got, hasn't
	got or haven't got.

1	She loves photography. She	three 5	I am an only child. I any brothers
	different professional cameras!		or sisters.
2	I backache. I can't take part	in 6	You can't live in the countryside if you
	the tennis competition.		a car.
3	Tom wants to join his friends at the resta		He a great job and earns a lot of
	on Friday, but he any money		money.
4	She any idea about what to	write 8	She is a pretty girl and very polite. She
	for her project because she didn't listen in	class.	many friends.

2	W	rite questions to match these answers.		
	1	A Have you got any hobbies?	4	Α?
		B Yes, I have. I collect old coins.		B Yes, he has. Two goldfish and a hamster.
	2	Α?	5	Α?
	3	B Yes, we have. We go there every summer. A?		B Yes, they have. They swim in it in the back garden.
	,	B No, I haven't. My car is small.	6	
		b No, I flavell t. My car is siliali.	0	B No, we haven't. We only have a laptop.
3	Ar	swer the following questions using short answ	ers.	
	1	Have you got a smartphone? (Yes) Yes, I have.	5	Have you got toothache? (Yes)
	2	A CONTRACTOR OF THE CONTRACTOR	6	Have Sam and John got a lorry? (No)
	3	Has your sister got any plans for the weekend? (No)	7	Have Tom and you got a boat? (Yes)
		weekend: (No)	8	Have Mr and Mrs Devito got any children?
	4	Have we got enough money? (Yes)	Ū	(No)
	1	Clare <u>has qot</u> brown eyes. Clare hasn't got brown eyes. Has Clare got brown eyes? Hasn't Clare got brown eyes? Nikolai a beard.	4	Shelong, brown hair. ? The cluba swimming pool.
	_		,	7
	3	They a small flat.	6	We a skateboard.
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
		?		?
5	Un	derline the incorrect form (if both forms are co	orrect,	do not underline).
	1	They have I have got breakfast at half past seven every morning.	4	What time do they have I have they got dinner on a Saturday and Sunday?
	2	Grandma has got I has a sleep after lunch.	5	Do you have I Have you got a shower after
	3	She has got I has blue eyes and long dark	-	your dance lesson?
		hair.	6	He hasn't got I doesn't have a car.

6	8	Put the following	words into the	correct order.	Then listen and	l check.
---	---	-------------------	----------------	----------------	-----------------	----------

- 1 tennis / got / Frank / racket / has / new / a Frank has got a new tennis racket.
- 2 shower / everyday / Tim / has / before / a / school
- 3 she / August / holiday / her / in / has / usually
- 4 have / did / a / you / flight / nice / ?
- 5 often / a / have / I / home / shower / when / get / I
- 6 chat / wants / Mrs Broad / to / a / with / have / you

7 Look at the pictures and write what you think is happening. Use to have in the Present continuous form.







1 The teenagers are having a party.

2 _____

3







4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

- 8 Answer the following questions using to have so they are true about you.
 - 1 What do you do when you get up in the morning?

day?

- What do you sometimes do when it's your birthday?
- 4 What can you do between meals if you are hungry?

3 What can you do if you feel tired during the

Present simple and adverbs of frequency

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	SHORT FORM		
I measure.	I do not measure.	I don't measure.		
You measure.	You do not measure.	You don't measure.		
He measures.	He does not measure.	He doesn't measure.		
She measures.	She does not measure.	She doesn't measure.		
It measures.	It does not measure.	It doesn't measure.		
We measure.	We do not measure.	We don't measure.		
You measure.	You do not measure.	You don't measure.		
They measure.	They do not measure.	They don't measure.		
		NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE		
INTERROGATIVE	SHORT ANSWERS	NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE		
INTERROGATIVE Do I measure?		NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE Don't I measure?		
Do I measure?	Yes, I do. / No, I don't.	Don't I measure?		
Do I measure? Do you measure?	Yes, I do. / No, I don't. Yes, you do. / No, you don't.	Don't I measure? Don't you measure?		
Do I measure? Do you measure? Does he measure?	Yes, I do. / No, I don't. Yes, you do. / No, you don't. Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.	Don't I measure? Don't you measure? Doesn't he measure?		
Do I measure? Do you measure? Does he measure? Does she measure?	Yes, I do. / No, I don't. Yes, you do. / No, you don't. Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't. Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.	Don't I measure? Don't you measure? Doesn't he measure? Doesn't she measure?		
Do I measure? Do you measure? Does he measure? Does she measure? Does it measure?	Yes, I do. / No, I don't. Yes, you do. / No, you don't. Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't. Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't. Yes, it does. / No, it doesn't.	Don't I measure? Don't you measure? Doesn't he measure? Doesn't she measure? Doesn't it measure?		

The Present simple is used:

- to express a habit or repeated action I get up at 7.30 a.m.
- to state a fact that is true
 The sun rises in the east.

 I am from Berlin in Germany.
 She works in a bank.
- to refer to times (of trains, TV programmes, etc.) The concert starts at 8.00 p.m.

Spelling in the third person singular affirmative for verbs ending in:

• -s, -ss, -ch, -sh, -x, -z or -o add -es.

I watch → He/She watches

• a consonant + -y drop the -y and add -ies.

I study → He/She studies

a vowel + -y add -s.

I buy → He/She buys

In questions, use do or does before the subject:

Do + Subject + Verb
What do you mean?
Does + Subject + Verb
Does Colin play snooker?

In negative sentences use do or does followed by not or -n't:

Cats don't like water. That lock doesn't open.

Note!	
When the question word (who , what , how) is the subject of the sentence, we except in the negative-interrogative form. Who likes dancing?	do not use do / does
How many people want to go on the rollercoaster?	
Adverbs of frequency	
We use adverbs of frequency to say how often we do things.	
0%	100%
never hardly ever seldom rarely not often occasionally sometimes often gene	erally usually always
	erally usually always
We usually put the adverb before the main verb:	erally usually always
We usually put the adverb before the main verb: She rarely goes swimming on a Saturday morning.	erally usually always
never hardly ever seldom rarely not often occasionally sometimes often generally we usually put the adverb before the main verb: She rarely goes swimming on a Saturday morning. I don't always eat cereal in the morning. With be, we put the adverb after the verb:	erally usually always

	talk move cut melt break	work	spend know sell leave		
	taik move cut men break	WUIK	spend know sen leave		
1	This car <u>breaks</u> down frequently.	6	I don't what he looks like any more		
2		7	What time do you at night?		
3	They fresh fruit and vegetables	8	The hairdresser my hair when		
	at that store.		it's too long.		
4		9	Ice cream in the sun.		
5	Thieves at night.	10	We a lot of money on clothes.		
. w	Irite questions and then use your imagination to	answ	er them.		
1			What time / he / wake up in the morning?		
(0)	What kind of music does he enjoy?	1077			
	He enjoys rock and roll.	6	26		
2	Where / your best friend / live?		Where / they / spend their holidays?		
	?				
3	How often / you / play tennis?	7	What / you / do at the weekends?		
4		8	Where / you / live?		
	?		-		
	·				
Aı	nswer these questions with short answers so the		A TOTAL TOTA		
1			Does your mum have brown hair?		
2					
3		7			
4	Do you enjoy going to the cinema?	8	Do you wake up early on Sundays?		

4	Wı	rite questions to match the answers. Remember that	t the a	answer is the underlined part of the sentence.
	1	Who goes by car?	5	?
		Karen goes by car.		I like visiting my grandmother at the weekend.
	2	When do they wake up?	6	?
	3	Maria and Sarah wake up <u>at 7 o'clock</u> .	7	They like smoked salmon.
		Terry works in a travel agency.		They like <u>pizza</u> .
	4	?	8	?
		He goes to the gym three times a week.		Tony studies Russian.
5	Wı	rite the verbs in brackets in the affirmative form	ı of th	ne Present simple. Then, write the sentences
	in	the negative, interrogative and negative-interro	gative	e forms.
	1	The dog (love) <u>loves</u> to play ball. The dog doesn't love to play ball.	4	Jenny (read) fashion blogs.
		Does the dog love to play ball?		?
		Doesn't the dog love to play ball?		?
	2	Joe's mother (work) in a bank.	5	You (drive) very fast.
		?		?
		?		?
	3	She (brush) her hair before bed.	6	Motorcycles (make) a lot of noise.
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
				?
6	9	Put the adverbs of frequency in the correct p	ositio	on in the centences, then listen and check
U		ur answers.	USILIU	in the sentences, then listen and thetk
			-	-1.1
	1	He gets up before half past nine. (never)	5	She knows what to say. (rarely)
	2	I drink my tea with milk. (usually)	6	I understand these exercises. (seldom)
	3	The children argue with each other. (often)	7	Do they go to the theatre? (ever)
	4	I travel by train. (sometimes)	8	We are late. (always)
		E		·
7	Wı	rite true sentences about you using the words be	elow	and adverbs of frequency.
		listen to music eat take	eaway	food read books
		go to the beach help your parents a	t hon	ne spend time on the Internet
	1	- T	4	
	2		5	
	3	<u> </u>	6	
		·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

Adjectives and nouns of nationality; Time / Dates

Adjectives and nouns of nationality can be divided into four groups:

- adjectives and nouns ending in -an and -i (+ Greek) add -s when they indicate the population
 Austria (nation) → Austrian (adjective) an Austrian (noun) the Austrians (population)
- adjectives and nouns ending in -ese (+ Swiss) have the same form as adjective, noun and population
 Japan (nation) → Japanese (adjective) a Japanese (noun) the Japanese (population)
- adjectives ending in -ch or -sh have the same form as the population, but to indicate a single person, we must add -man / -woman.

France (nation) → French (adjective) - a Frenchman/woman (noun) - the French (population)

adjectives and nouns which have different forms.
 Poland (nation) - Polish (adjective) - a Pole (noun) - the Poles (population)

Note!

The adjective without *the* usually indicates the language. *He speaks Italian fluently*.

Note!

Adjectives and nouns of nationality are always written with a capital letter: an Italian newspaper

Time

 $2.00 = two \ o'clock$; $2.15 = a \ quarter \ past \ two$; $2.30 = half \ past \ two$; $2.45 = a \ quarter \ to \ three$; $2.50 = ten \ to \ three$

We use **a.m.** to indicate the hours from midnight to midday; **p.m.** to indicate the hours from midday to midnight. We can also use *in the morning*, *in the afternoon*, *in the evening* or *at night*.

I finish work at 5.30 p.m. [not: 17.30.]

Dates

The date is usually expressed using ordinal numbers.

5th June 1997 = the fifth of June, nineteen ninety-seven

Months and days always have capital letters.

January, April, Sunday, Thursday...

Complete the following chart.

Nation	Adjective	Noun	Population
1	French		4 84
2 3 England		-	the Poles
4	· ·	an Irishman/woman	-
5 Japan			
6		a Swiss	
7 Germany			
8	Greek		T-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-
9			the Welsh
0		a Chinese	

2	10	Correc	t the r	nistakes	in th	ie fol	lowing	sentences.	Then	listen	and	checl	k
	•	COLLEC	t the r	motunes	****	IC IOI	10 11 1116	schicites.	THEH	Hoten	unu	CHCCI	

Tulips are typical Holland flowers. Tulips are typical Dutch flowers.
He drives a Italy car.
Feta is a Greece cheese.
There are two Swisses in my class.
He drinks Germany beer.
The Spaniards live in Spain.
The American speak English, too.
The Frenchs speak French.



3 Write these times in full.

1	17.20	twenty past five (in the afternoon)	7	12.50	
2	8.10		8	20.05	
3	9.00		9	4.35	
4	00.25		10	16.25	
5	15.30	·	11	23.15	
6	8.45		12	6.55	

	write questions and answers. Then listen an	a che	CK.
1	What time / school / start? (8.05 a.m.) What time does school start?	4	What time / post office / close? (5.30 p.m.)
	It starts at 8.05.		9
2	What time / you / have breakfast? (7.15 a.m.)	5	train / leave / 4.00? (No / 3.50 p.m.)
3	What time / they / leave home? (8.00 a.m.)	6	banks / close / 1.30? (No / 5.00 p.m.)
	i		



5 W	What do you USUALLY or NEVER do at these time	s on v	veekdays and on Sundays?
1	7.00 a.m.	5	3.15 p.m.
	I usually get up at seven o'clock on weekdays.		
	I never get up at seven o'clock on Sundays.		
2	7.15 a.m.	6	7.45 p.m.
3	8.20 a.m.	7	9.00 p.m.
		<u>8</u> 2	
4	1.40 p.m.	8	11.45 p.m.
6 W	Vrite these dates in full.		
1	0	4	Tues, 2nd Sept, 1990
	Wednesday the eleventh of August, nineteen		
	ninety-nine or Wednesday, August the		
	eleventh, nineteen ninety-nine		
2	Fri, 21st Nov, 1970	5	Mon, 10th Mar, 1932
3	Sun, 4th July, 1776	6	Thurs, 3rd Apr, 2002
7 A	nswer the following questions so they are true a	bout	VOIL
1	THE RESIDENCE OF STREET STREET, AND ASSOCIATED SHOWN THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPE	4	When is Christmas Day?
٠	It's the twenty-first of March.	4	When is christmas Day:
2		5	When is New Year's Eve?
3	When is your best friend's birthday?	6	When do you begin your Easter holidays?
8 4	Listen and write the dates and times in full.		
1	2 23 toll and 11 life inc dates and innes in land	5	
2		6	
3	1	7	
4		8	
4	1 e	8	-

Direct and indirect objects; Word order

The position of direct and indirect objects (pronouns and nouns) in sentences.

With some verbs (*lend*, *borrow*, *send*, *bring*, *give*...) the sentence construction can differ, depending on whether the verb is followed by a direct or an indirect object:

subject + verb + indirect object + direct object

She sends her

• subject + verb + direct object + to / for / from + indirect object

They give money to him.

The second construction is less common and is used:

- when the indirect object is made up of several words
 Tom is sending forty invitations to his friends for his birthday party.
- when the object is a pronoun. Why don't you lend it to me?

In some cases (verbs such as *explain*, *introduce*, *deliver*, *describe*...) only the second construction is possible.

Can you introduce your cousin to me?

The normal order of a question is:

question word + auxiliary + subject + verb + object etc.

Where are you taking them?

Do they like tennis?

Word order

The normal order of a sentence is:

subject + adverb of frequency + verb + object + manner + place + time + frequency

She always takes her children to church on Sundays.

She always takes her children to church
We never do our homework in the library.

They walk slowly.

Note!

Alternatively, the time can go at the beginning of the sentence.

Next week, I'm going to Disneyland.

1 Replace the underlined word(s) with a pronoun and use the alternative construction. Then listen and check.

1 I never send him emails.

I never send them to him.

2 I always give my boss my projects on time.

3 Laura and Sylvia often take the dog out for a walk.

- 4 Give Lucy the headphones, please.
- 5 I often buy my grandmother flowers.
- 6 He rarely shows his friends <u>his photos</u>.

		rite sentences and questions using the words gi		the former / always / sive / / former
	1	why / you / not phone / the police / for me? Why don't you phone the police for me?	4	the farmer / always / give / me / free eggs
	2	why / you / not get / some / strawberries / for your recipe?	5	why / we / not send / them / chocolates / for their anniversary?
	3	they / often / not take / it / to / school	6	we / not want / take / them / to / England
3	Re	write the sentences to change the direct object sen	tences	to indirect object sentences, as in the example.
	1	I often buy flowers for her. I often buy her flowers.	5	They want to buy a drink for us.
	2	Why don't you give some money to him?	6	He rarely lends money to his friends.
	3	Could you pass the plates to us, please?	7	We always bring souvenirs for them.
	4	I bought these jeans for you.	8	You never do favours for me.
	2	I take him/her the class register every morning. Give the key to Megan.	5	She gives the students homework every day.
	2	morning.	5	
	3	Can you give the money to the taxi driver, please?	6	The technician checks the computers once a month.
5		write the sentences, replacing the underlined verticed to a direct object. The teacher explained the lesson to the	words	with a subject pronoun, an indirect object Uncle Alex and aunty Cathy often come to
		students.		see me and my brother.
	2	She/He explained it to them. John is out with Ellie for a meal.	6	
	2	She/He explained it to them.	6 7	see me and my brother.
		She/He explained it to them. John is out with Ellie for a meal.		see me and my brother. This dog usually chases cats.

Present continuous

AFFIRMATIVE	SHORT	FORM	NEGATIVE		SHORT FORM	
I am searching. You are searching. He is searching. She is searching. It is searching. We are searching. You are searching. They are searching.	He's sea She's se It's searc We're se You're se	ching. I am not searching. earching. You are not searching. rching. He is not searching. arching. She is not searching.		ing. g. ng. ing.	I'm not searching. You aren't searching. He isn't searching. She isn't searching. It isn't searching. We aren't searching. You aren't searching. They aren't searching.	
IINTERROGATIVE		SHORT ANSWE	RS NEGAT		IVE-INTERROGATIVE	
Am I searching? Are you searching? Is he searching? Is she searching? Yes, you are. / No, he is. / No, he is. / No, he is. / No, it is it searching? Are we searching? Are you searching? Are you searching? Yes, you are. / No, Yes, you are. / No, Yes, they are. / No, Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes		you aren't. e isn't. he isn't. sn't. we aren't. you aren't.	Are you Is he not Is she not Is it not Are we r	searching? not searching? searching? ot searching? searching? not searching? not searching? not searching?		

The Present continuous is formed as follows:

subject + to be + verb in base form + -ing

I am studying. He isn't coming.

The question form of the Present continuous is formed as follows:

question word + to be + subject + verb in base form + -ing

What are they doing?

Observe the following spelling rules:

- verbs ending in -e, drop the -e and add -ing
 to take → taking (Exceptions: to dye → dyeing; to queue → queueing.)
- verbs ending in -y, add -ing to stay → staying
- short verbs ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the final consonant
 to drop → dropping (Exceptions: verbs ending in -x and -w do not double the final consonant: to
 draw → drawing.)
- longer verbs ending in one vowel and one consonant, with the stress on the last syllable, double
 the final consonant
 - to begin → beginning
- verbs ending in one vowel followed by -l, double the -l and add -ing.
 to travel → travelling (Exceptions: to dial → dialling; to fuel → fuelling.)
- verbs ending in -ie, change -ie to -y and add -ing to lie → lying
- verbs ending in -c, add -k and -ing to panic → panicking

The Present continuous is used:

- to express an activity that is happening now They're playing cards in the living room.
- to express an activity happening around now, but maybe not at the exact moment of speaking *I'm going to English lessons this year*.
- to express future plans already arranged, especially when you say when and who with. *I'm having dinner with Tony tonight.*

Note!

There are several verbs which aren't normally used in the continuous tenses. They are verbs of:

- thinking
 - to know, to realise, to believe, to forget, to want, to wish, to imagine...
- being
 - to be, to exist...
- appearance
 - to appear, to seem, to look like...
- sense
 - to hear, to taste, to smell, to see... (Exception: to feel)
- liking and disliking to love, to like, to hate, to admire...

Note!

These verbs are also not usually used in the continuous form: to matter, to involve, to surprise, to mean, to interest, to deserve, to satisfy, to concern...

Note!

When to have does not indicate possession, it can be used in the continuous tense. She's having dinner at the moment.

Write the -ing form of the following verbs.

make _	9 take
sit _	10 lie
forget _	11 email
begin _	12 queue
swim	13 travel
drive	14 copy
start	15 panic
shop _	16 show
	sit forget begin swim drive start

2 Complete the following sentences with the Present continuous of the verbs in the box.

		study	work	live	have	listen	cry	go	read	play
1	am listening	to my	new MP	3 play	er.	6	I			to work by bus because
2	She	no	w beca	use			my c	ar is	broken.	
	tomorrow she ha	as her d	riving te	st.		7	He _			a bath. Can he phone
3	They	t	able ten	nis at	the		you l	back	ater?	
	gym.					8	She			because she lost her
4	We	ve	ry hard	at the			favou	urite i	ing.	
	moment at scho	ol on ou	r course	ework.		9		5-279		you any
5	I	in Co	rk now.				inter	esting	books	at the moment?

3	W	rite sentences or questions using the Present c	ontinuo	ous.		
	1	I / study / English / USA / this year	5	your brother / go / N	laples / by train?	
		I'm studying English in the USA this year.). 	- 20	
	2	they / learn / Chinese / with a private teacher	6	what / your mum / ograss / garden	do? She / cutting the	
	3	Vicky / play / golf / now		A		
	4	you / go / shopping? No / go / dentist's A	7	What / you / do? I /	have / lunch	
		В				
4		rite sentences using the Present continuous forming (X) at the moment.	to des	cribe what the person	is doing (✓) or isn't	
	1	I / talk / on the phone (X)	5	Oliver / listen / to th	e teacher (🗸)	
	2	Hannah / do / her English exercises (✓)	6	Lauren / look for / her glasses (🗸)		
	3	Simon / swim (✓)	7	Emily / have / lunch (X)		
	4	Marcus and Ivan / watch / a TV programme (X)	8	Greg and Cara / conce	entrate / on their work (🗸)	
5		rite the verbs in the sentences in the Present cogative, interrogative and negative-interrogative She (work) <u>is working</u> on her blog.	e.		Then, make them the motorbike.	
		She isn't working on her blog.				
		Is she working on her blog?		<u> </u>	?	
	2	He (teach) his son to ride a bike.	6		an enormous hole.	
		?			?	
	3	The plane (fly) at 2,000 metres.	7	The firemen (put)	out the fire.	
		<u> </u>		····	?	
	4	Tom (clean) his shoes.	8	Lisa (knock)	at the door.	
				3	·	
					: 7	
		:			<u>.</u>	

_	(14)	\ _									
6	sen	• Present simple or Present continuous? Underline the correct tense to complete these sentences. Then listen and check.									
	2 3 4 5	B They to She doesn is swimm The fire g bring I Is A Does it B Yes, it I He never	do they go I are they going? ake I are taking the dog for a walk. I't work I isn't working, she swims I ing in the river. oes I is going out. Does someone someone bringing more wood? rain I Is it raining? rains I is raining very hard. listens I is listening to what you say. you usually have I are you usually to breakfast?	7 8 9 10	A Who moves I is moving the furniture upstairs? B It's Tom. He paints I is painting his bedroom. A What do you read I are you reading? B I read I am reading Lewis Hamilton's biography. Do you understand I Are you understanding what the teacher explains I is explaining? Tom never helps I is helping me. He works I is working on his bike all the time.						
7	and		f the verbs in these sentences are w	rong. C	orrect the wrong sentences and then listen						
		I know th	wing the answer.	6	They usually speak so quickly that we don't understand them.						
	2	birds sing	ly day. The sun shines and the g.	7	I'm refusing to answer any questions about my job. I'm on holiday!						
				8	I can't hear what you say. The music is too loud.						
	5	I am lovir	ng meeting my friends.	9	She usually phones me on Saturday evenings.						
8	16	Listen a	nd complete the dialogue.								
		rviewer	Hello Richard. Thanks for (1) you (3)		at the moment?						
		nard rviewer	I'm (4) some friends. I'n Do you always come to the UK on he		BOOK STORES CONTROL TO THE CONTROL OF THE CONTROL O						
		nard	No! But I love it here. Liverpool is a								
		rviewer	What are your plans for today?								
	Rich	nard	I'm jogging around the park with a f (6) autographs at a boo	k signi	n the morning and in the afternoon I'm ng.						
		rviewer	Where (7) you (8)		?						
		nard	In a nice hotel in the centre.	(40)	61.2						
		rviewer nard	One last question. (9) y Yes, at the moment I'm (11)								
	KICI	aid	res, at the moment in (ii)	a ı	inii i startea last illolitii.						

Thank you very much Richard. I can't wait to see your next film!

Interviewer

must, have to, can, could, be able to, should, need, may, might

Must is used:

to give strong advice and orders to ourselves and to others

I really must go to bed earlier.

You mustn't eat too much fast food.

for obligations

You must tell the truth!

• in affirmative sentences to say that something is certain or highly possible The phone is ringing, it must be my mum.

must + **have** + past participle is used to draw conclusions in relation to events/situations in the past. *I broke my leg last winter while skiing. That must have been so painful!*

have to + infinitive is used to talk about obligations imposed by external circumstances. *How often do you have to go away on business?*

The meaning is quite similar to **must** in the affirmative Present simple. In the negative, however, they have very different meanings.

You must tell David! = You have to tell David! (In both cases, the meaning is: It is imperative to tell David.)

You mustn't tell David! (It is imperative that you do not tell David. I forbid you to tell David.) You don't have to tell David! (It's not necessary to tell David, but you may if you like.)

Can is used:

to talk about ability

She can play the piano very well.

• to talk about possibility and probability

I don't think that bike can be repaired.

to ask for or give permission

Can I have something to drink, please?

as a negative for must in sentences such as:

You walked home in the rain? It can't have been very nice.

To form the past we use: **can't + have +** past participle *He can't have walked. It's too far.*

Could is used:

 for particular occasions in the past, with verbs like: to see, to hear, to smell, to taste, to feel, to understand, to remember

I could smell something burning.

· to express formal invitations or suggestions

Could you lend me some money, please?

We could go together.

· to make offers or requests

Could you close the window, please?

• in conditional sentences (see Unit 34)

If you spoke English fluently, you could get a better job. (= If you spoke English fluently, you would be able to get a better job.)

 to express a permanent ability or capacity. Otherwise we use: was / were able to, managed to or succeed in.

They could speak Italian (permanent ability) so they were able to ask for directions (ability/possibility at that moment).

be able to + infinitive often has the same meaning as **can** when the infinitive is required. Some people are able to / can speak five languages.

Be able to is used in cases (future, present perfect) where **can** is not grammatically possible. Soon the baby will be able to walk. (Not: ... will can walk.)

Should is used:

- to talk about obligation, duty or similar, but it is less strong than must People shouldn't eat too much fatty foods.
- · in conditional sentences

If I had a day off, I should clean the house.

We use **should have / shouldn't have +** past participle to indicate that you or someone else made a mistake or a bad decision.

I should have written her a birthday card but I forgot

I shouldn't have eaten so much food.

You should have studied more for the exam.

She shouldn't have left her bag in the classroom.

Need is used:

to refer to immediate necessity

Do you need anything else?

· as a modal verb, to ask for or to give permission

You needn't pay this bill.

Do I need to arrive early?

Note!

Need has two negative forms in the past:

don't / doesn't / didn't need + infinitive, meaning: It was not necessary and it wasn't done.
You didn't need to bring that subject up.

needn't + **have** + past participle to mean:

It was not necessary but it was done.

We needn't have called to say hello. (But we did!)

May is used:

- formally to ask for, to give or to refuse permission May I come in, please?
- · to talk about a possibility in the present or future

We may go to Amsterdam next year. (There is a 50% chance.)

• for past events: **may** + **have** + past participle

They may have called while we were at the cinema.

Might is used:

• to ask for permission, to make suggestions and to express possibilities We might go to India next year. (There is a 35% chance.)

· in second conditional sentences

If I won the lottery, I might donate some money to charity.

· to express future in the past

He said he might stop.

Note!

The past **might** + **have** + past participle is used:

to express possibility

I might have been sleeping.

- to say that something was possible but didn't happen
 - He was lucky, he might have fallen down.
- to make suggestions or express disappointment, reproach You might have informed me before I spoke.

2	2	He doesn't see very well, so he wear glasses all the time.	4	I never remember their phone number.
2		wear glasses all the time.		
2			-	l always look it up.
2	-	The buses were full, so I walk.		
2	,	Tell the students they be in class at 8.30 a.m. sharp.	6	You take the dog for a walk every day.
	Co	mplete the sentences with the correct form of c	an, co	uld or be able to.
	1	Fantastic! Mum says I stay out until 11.00 p.m.	4	The writing was too small. I make out what it said.
	2	I'm sure that if you concentrated, you	5	The fog cleared, so we drive
	_	do it.	-	home without too many problems.
	3	you turn the music down,	6	If you don't study hard, you go
		please?		to university.
3	Co	mplete the sentences with the correct form of s	hould.	
	1	If the phone ring, will you	4	It's funny that you mention
		answer it?		Tom, I was just thinking about him.
	2	I don't think that jacket suits you. You	5	We gone to bed late because
		bought the blue coat.		now we're exhausted.
	3	Itold her the news. Now she's	6	You bite your nails. It's
		worried.		unhygienic and it doesn't look nice.
4	Co	mplete the sentences with must, mustn't or nee	dn't.	
	1	You speak to her like that. It's	4	My dad says I do what my
		not polite.		mum says.
	2	In the park dogs stay on a lead	5	I want this shirt washed, but you
		all the time.		do it today. Tomorrow will be
	3	You turn on the light. I can see		fine.
		quite well.	6	We forget to lock the door.
5	Re	write the following sentences using may or mig	ht. So	metimes both are possible.
	1	The weather is quite hot. It's possible we'll	4	If you ask a doctor, perhaps he'll be able to
		go to the beach later.		suggest a cure.
		The weather is quite hot. We may/might go		
		to the beach later.		·
	2	It's possible we won't find a table at that	5	It's quite possible that Tony and Maria will
		restaurant because we didn't book in advance.		move to Liverpool.
	•	Challing habban in 18 habban in 18	_	M
	3	She'll probably call us if she doesn't get home too late.	6	It's not impossible that my dad will change his job.

Prepositions of place

	e is a list of prepositions of cont of, opposite, under, a				xt to, beside,
Lool	k at these examples of how	they are used:			
• in	e cup is in the cupboard.	There's some mon	ev in my purse.	The cinema is	in Ivvbridge.
• ins				The emema is	w.r.yor.uge.
• on					
• at	u can get that information o	at the station. Th	e children are at	school.	
	nong				
	o not worry. You are among	friends now.			
• be	tween				
Tin	na is sitting between Jason	and Joseph.			
• ne		(. 6 6)			
	ive near the police station. xt to/beside	(not far from)			
	xt to/beside he directory is next to the ph	one Come and sit 1	reside me		
• in	front of		reside me.		
	ere is a large tree in front o posite	oj our nouse.			
Th	e detective sat down oppos	ite the criminal.			
• un	e cat is under the table.				
	gainst				
	e put the sofa against the w	all.			
	tside				
Th	e children are playing outs	ide in the garden.			
• be	hind				
Th	e little boy is hiding behind	the door.			
• ab		•			
	an't see the plane. It must b	e above the clouds.			
• be		nou Laguesa it	loanly!		
• OV	e plane is below the clouds	now – 1 can see u c	rieariy:		
	e horse jumped over the fe	nce.			
o t at.		a=1500 t			
Co	mplete these sentences usi	ng in or at.			
1	Was there a lot to eat	at the			La Scala
	party?			d I ate	
2	The party's B			nt during our sta	ay
3	David's ill. He wasn't		Florence	2.	
	school today. He was	home	8 It was a	very slow train.	It stopped
	bed.			every single	
4	Tomorrow I won't be	home. I'll	9 It was e	xtremely hot	the
	ho Victoria's	house	thoatro	- Contraction of the Contraction	

5 When did he arrive ______ Britain?

10 I didn't see you _____ class yesterday. What happened?

2 Complete the sentences with either in, at or on and ONE of the phrases or words from the box.

	Rome the back of the envelope the sofa		Coast my way to work the right front page of the newspaper Austria
	When you send a letter, you should always write the return address	6	I usually have some breakfast
		7	I saw the photo
2	The Colosseum is	8	Next winter we're going skiing
3			
	was sitting	9	New York is of the
4			USA.
		10	My grandfather spends all day sitting
5			
3 (omplete the sentences with in, at or on.		
1	I spent my holidays in Cornwall, in	11	After many months abroad, he arrived
	the UK.		back Madrid last week.
2	Would you like some lemon your	12	The plane from Manchester arrives
	tea?		gate 14.
3	My flat is the second floor. It's	13	What time do you expect to arrive
	the second door your right.		Vienna?
4		14	What time do you usually arrive
	the garden.		the office in the morning?
5		15	The party is 45 Parkholme Road.
	scarhis forehead.	16	When we arrived Paris, we went
6			directly to our hotel.
7		17	What time did you arrive work?
	work.	18	It's exciting to arrive a new city.
8	Who is the girl standing the door?	19	There is a funny article the
9			magazine page 12.
	Scotland.	20	The boat dropped us off right the
10	You'll find the weather forecast	0.000	sand of the beach.
	the last page of the newspaper.		



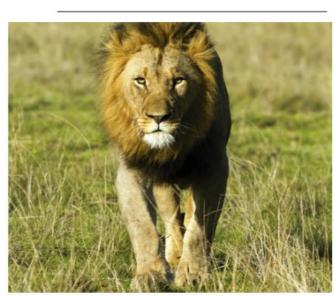
	1	A Is there a supermarket your	4	They've put a tent the garden.
		house?		Who sits you in class?
		B Yes, there's one the corner.		She's standing the bus stop.
	2	Look at those big black clouds		Put the shopping bags the tabl
		the village.		please.
	3	A Where's mum?	8	They planted a rose bush the
		B She's the hairdresser's.		window.
5	17	• Underline the most suitable preposition in t	he sent	ences. Then listen and check.
	1	There has been an accident at I to I on the motorway.	6	You can borrow my notes from the lessons, if you want. They're in lat l on my desk.
	2	The dog was sitting behind I against I	7	I couldn't find my hat because it was below
	11000	beside me on the couch.	-	/ under / near my bed.
	3	I saw your husband come outside lout of l	8	A Excuse me? Where's the bank?
		out his office.		B Turn right in at on the post office, go
	4	Lidia threw a ball at me and it hit me at I on		straight on and then turn right again in /
		/ in my eye.		at I on the traffic lights.
	5	The seating arrangement to I for I in the	9	My summer house is between I in front of I
		restaurant was not very good. Our table was		among the lake.
		next to / outside / on the kitchen.	10	My son is there sitting among / between the other children.
6	18	• Answer the following questions using the a	ppropr	iate prepositions of place. Write full
	sei	ntences. Then listen and check.	•• •	
	1	Where do people usually put their TV antennas? (roof)	8	Where do you usually put a ladder? (wall)
		People usually put their TV antennas on the roof.	9	Where do people wear hats? (their head)
	2	Where do you usually park a car? (garage)	10	Where do lions live? (Africa)
	3	Where do you find cash dispensers? (bank)	(2)	
	4	Where do you usually put a carnet? (floor)	1993	

Where do you usually push a chair? (table)

Where do people catch planes? (airport)

Where do animals in a zoo live? (cages)

6



Prepositions of time

We use at with:

· clock times

I have dinner at six o'clock.

 public holidays and weekends Come and see us at Christmas. What do you do at weekends?

a precise moment
 He's studying English at the moment / at the present.

We use on with:

- days of the week
 I often see them on Sundays.
- dates

We go out to eat on Easter Day. We leave on July 15th.

+ time to indicate punctuality
 He never arrives home on time.

We use during + noun:

 to say when something happens There was silence during the exam.

We use in with:

· months

My birthday is in March.

parts of the day.
 My lessons are in the morning. (Exception: at night)

seasons

I love skiing in winter.

· years or centuries

I was born in 1970. He lived in the 19th century.

- a period of time that indicates a time in the future I'll see you in fifteen minutes.
- + time to indicate sufficient time
 Make sure you're in time to see the beginning. (= before it starts.)

Note!

We do not use a preposition with: today, yesterday, tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, the day before yesterday, last night, last week, next month, yesterday evening, this evening, tonight... I went to his house last week.

after – Following an event or a time Let's go for a drink after the opera.

till / until – To say how long a situation lasts *I'm not leaving until this programme finishes*.

by – Not later than a precise time *You must be in class by 8.00 a.m.* (not later!)

before – Preceding an event or a time *I'll meet you before our lesson*.

within – Not later than a defined period This book must be finished within three weeks.

for + period of time - To express how long something goes on He is staying for three days.

1	dinner time	13	every Monday	
2	3rd November	14	her birthday	
3	the morning	15	the afternoon	
4	Tuesday	16	Christmas	
5	midnight	17	spring	
6	the day before yesterday	18	this evening	
7	night	19	sunrise	
8	the 19th century	20	a week	
9	May	21	dinner	
10	1989	22	today	
11	Easter	23	time	
12	a quarter past two	24	Easter Sunday	
Fi 1	Il in the gaps with either for or during. It rained two days without	7	He always goes out at weeke	nds but he nev
	It rained two days without	7	He always goes out at weeke	
1	It rained two days without stopping.		goes out the we	ek.
1	It rained two days without stopping. I fell asleep the film.	8	goes out the we I've lived in this flat	ek. three year
1 2 3	It rained two days without stopping. I fell asleep the film. I waited an hour and then I let	8 ft. 9	goes out the we I've lived in this flat I'll call you some time	ek. three year
1	It rained two days without stopping. I fell asleep the film. I waited an hour and then I let He hasn't lived in Italy all his life. He lived in	8 ft. 9 n	goes out the we I've lived in this flat I'll call you some time afternoon.	ek. three year: the
1 2 3 4	It rained two days without stopping. I fell asleep the film. I waited an hour and then I let He hasn't lived in Italy all his life. He lived in Germany a few years.	8 ft. 9	goes out the we I've lived in this flat I'll call you some time afternoon. Robert began to feel ill	ek. three year: the
1 2 3	It rained two days without stopping. I fell asleep the film. I waited an hour and then I let He hasn't lived in Italy all his life. He lived is Germany a few years. I'm starving. I haven't eaten anything	8 ft. 9 n 10	goes out the we I've lived in this flat I'll call you some time afternoon. Robert began to feel ill examination.	ek. three year: the the
1 2 3 4 5	It rained two days without stopping. I fell asleep the film. I waited an hour and then I let He hasn't lived in Italy all his life. He lived it Germany a few years. I'm starving. I haven't eaten anything hours.	8 ft. 9 n 10	goes out the we I've lived in this flat I'll call you some time afternoon. Robert began to feel ill examination. Where have you been? I've b	ek. three year: the the
1 2 3 4	It rained two days without stopping. I fell asleep the film. I waited an hour and then I let He hasn't lived in Italy all his life. He lived is Germany a few years. I'm starving. I haven't eaten anything hours. I had a terrible fight with my best friend an	8 ft. 9 n 10 11 d	goes out the we I've lived in this flat I'll call you some time afternoon. Robert began to feel ill examination. Where have you been? I've b ages.	ek three years the the een waiting
1 2 3 4 5	It rained two days without stopping. I fell asleep the film. I waited an hour and then I let He hasn't lived in Italy all his life. He lived it Germany a few years. I'm starving. I haven't eaten anything hours.	8 ft. 9 n 10 11 d	goes out the we I've lived in this flat I'll call you some time afternoon. Robert began to feel ill examination. Where have you been? I've b ages.	ek three years the the een waiting

	the Nineties the same time
	September the morning 21st July 1969
	Sundays the age of 26 the moment
	The first man landed on the moon
	In Italy football matches are usually played
	There will be a space rocket launch
	In Britain children start school
	I got married
	i got illullieu
	Internet became popular .
•	
,	Internet became popular



		mplete the sentences with either at, on or in.			
	1	The film starts 8.00 p.m.	9	I haven't seen my neighbour for a wh	nile.
	2	I learned English two years.		The last time I saw her was	
	3	The lessons begin15th September		Sunday.	
		and end 10th June.	10	I might not be at the office	the
	4	We travelled overnight to Milan and arrived		afternoon. Can you call me	
		7.55 the morning.		Tuesday?	
	5	Mozart was born in Salzburg	11	My grandmother died19	980
		1756.		the age of 86.	
	6	Did you do anything exciting	12	I'm a secretary but I'm out of work	
		the weekend.		the moment.	
	7	I'll phone you Thursday	13	The price of petrol went up	
		afternoon 4 o'clock.		August.	
	8	Hurry up! Our plane leaves	14	Saturday mornings I usu	ally go
		15 minutes.		to the supermarket.	
				to the supermarket.	
				to the supermarket.	
5	Co	mplete the sentences with either by or until.		to the supermarket.	
5	Co 1	mplete the sentences with either <i>by</i> or <i>until</i> . My father is abroad. He'll be away	6	•	
5		My father is abroad. He'll be away	6	I should receive an answer	
5	1	My father is abroad. He'll be awaySunday.		I should receive an answer Friday.	
5		My father is abroad. He'll be away Sunday. Sorry, but I must go. I have to be home		I should receive an answer Friday. I'm staying with some friends	
5	1	My father is abroad. He'll be away Sunday. Sorry, but I must go. I have to be home 9.00 p.m.	7	I should receive an answer Friday. I'm staying with some friends I can find my own flat.	
5	1	My father is abroad. He'll be away Sunday. Sorry, but I must go. I have to be home 9.00 p.m. I can't pick up my car Monday.	7	I should receive an answer	g.
5	1 2 3	My father is abroad. He'll be awaySunday. Sorry, but I must go. I have to be home9.00 p.m. I can't pick up my car Monday. I think I'll wait tomorrow	7 8	I should receive an answer Friday. I'm staying with some friends I can find my own flat. Let's wait it stops rainin I'll probably be asleep t	g.
5	1 2 3	My father is abroad. He'll be away Sunday. Sorry, but I must go. I have to be home 9.00 p.m. I can't pick up my car Monday.	7 8 9	I should receive an answer	g. he time
5	1 2 3 4	My father is abroad. He'll be awaySunday. Sorry, but I must go. I have to be home9.00 p.m. I can't pick up my car Monday. I think I'll wait tomorrow before making a decision.	7 8 9	I should receive an answer Friday. I'm staying with some friends I can find my own flat. Let's wait it stops rainin I'll probably be asleep t	g. he time

1	Easter is always	a Sunday.
2	Friday comes	Saturday.
3	Friday comes	Thursday.
4	The bank is never open	
	weekends, only	weekdays.
5	your holiday	y did you visit any
	museums?	
6	You must finish your hon	nework
	7.30 p.m.,	dinner.
7	This project must be finis	shed
	a week and no later.	
8	The bus is leaving	two
	minutes.	



Prepositions of movement

• up

The man ran up the hill.

down

I walked down the stairs.

- through A vertical movement from one side of something to the other, passing inside it.
 The thieves entered through the window.
- (away) from Movement leaving behind an object, place or person.
 The cat ran away from the dog.
- towards Movement in the general direction of something. She walked towards the policeman.
- to Movement towards a specific destination.
 I'm going to the bank.

Note!

There is no preposition with verbs of movement + home.

Tony went home.

I got home before Jim. (there is no preposition with the verbs to arrive / to get + home)

Note!

to arrive is followed by in or at, never by to.

I arrived at the station at two o'clock.

- into To a destination within something.
 They opened the door and got into the car.
- out of To a destination outside something.
 When he arrived, he got out of the taxi.
- across Movement going from one side to the other, usually on the surface.
 He swam across the river.
- over Movement from one side to the other, usually above the surface.
 Let's walk over the bridge.
- by Movement passing beside / next to something.
 He passed by me but didn't say hello.
- past Movement passing from one side to the other.
 John is walking past the office window.
- (a)round Circular movement I walked around the city.
- along Passing the length of something The boat sailed along the river.
- **under** Movement under something *The river flows under the bridge*.

1	Underline	the	approp	riate pre	position.
_			-FFF	P	F

- 1 If you walk <u>along</u> / in / to New Bridge Street, you will find the bank.
- 2 The River Po flows in / along / through Lombardy.
- 3 Nine planets move under / across / around the Sun.
- 4 There's a big dog coming past / out of / towards us.
- 5 I'm going to I down I across the supermarket. Do you need anything?
- 6 Many trains go on / under / through that tunnel every day.
- 7 The doctor is coming out of / off / outside the operating theatre.
- 8 Let the children get round / over / across the road first.

2 Choose the correct preposition from the box.

	throu	ugh up	across	out o	f into	around	
1	The car went times trying to find a parki	ng space.		4 5	The little	himself boy walked _	
2	Some robbers broke	our h	ouse		puddle.		
_	last night.			6	The main		ked so I walked
3	The boy ran quickly back home.	the fi	elds		entered.	to the seco	ond floor and
1	 Join A with B using an ap A The cruise ship is very big 			В			raise money for
		and can t pa	33 a		the Englis	Sii Ciiaiiiiei to	raise infoliey for
2	Look! That girl is running				charity		
2	Look! That girl is running We're walking		ь	, \Box	charity. that ladd	er.	
	Look! That girl is running We're walking I'm afraid to climb		b		that ladd		
3	We're walking			1	that ladd the harbo	er. our bridge. urant after her	hat.
3 4	We're walking I'm afraid to climb		c		that ladd the harbo the resta	our bridge.	house and the second
3 4 5	We're walking I'm afraid to climb The woman swam		d		that ladd the harbo the resta	our bridge. urant after her t after the ban	house and the second
3 4 5	We're walking I'm afraid to climb The woman swam The police officer ran The cruise ship is very big an		c d e f		that ladd the harbo the restar the street the cinen	our bridge. urant after her t after the ban na.	k robber.
3 4 5 6	We're walking I'm afraid to climb The woman swam The police officer ran		c d e f	:	that ladd the harbo the restanthe street the cinen	our bridge. urant after her t after the ban na.	house and the
3 4 5 6	We're walking I'm afraid to climb The woman swam The police officer ran The cruise ship is very big an	=	6 6 6 f		that ladd the harbo the restar the street the cinen	our bridge. urant after her t after the ban na.	k robber.

4		Complete the following sentences with an a d check.	ppropi	riate preposition of moven	nent. Then listen
	1	Samantha is tired so she's going the stairs to bed.	5	When you try to drive city for the first time, it's o	
	2	When I'm not in a hurry, I walk	6		
		Richmond Street and catch the	7	02000 W 97202	
		bus there.		without a key.	
	3	When my son comes school,	8		the
		he always runs the garden.		swimming pool in the dee	The first own many
	4	The horse jumped the fence	9	(E) (A)	8)
		and ran the river, getting the		to get the ca	N.T.
		rider all wet.	10		
				roads at the weekend wit	
5	Co	mplete with to, in, into, by or at.			
	1	I'm going the post office to post	10	When did she arrive	London?
	160	this letter.	11	12 III	
	2	Will you beschool tomorrow?		yesterday afternoon?	
	3	She put the old kitchen appliances	12	We drove the	airport to nick up
	-	the recycling bin.	37.77	Cullum.	amport to piek up
	4	Do you ever walk work?	13		e hus ston this
	5	We had a delicious meal and then we took a	13	morning, but Alicia wasn't	
	,	taxi back the flat.	1/	When she came	The state of the s
	6	Katie went China last week.	1.7	everyone stopped talking.	the room,
	7	Shall we go Megan's house?	15	He's broken his leg. I must	go tho
	8	The postman passed my house	13	hospital to visit him.	go the
	0	but didn't leave any letters.	16	Shall we walk	the hus ston?
	9	I'll wait home until my husband	17		
	9	arrives and then we'll go the	17		tileiii
		cinema.		without saying a word.	
6	Co	mplete the sentences with the correct preposit	ions.		
	1	Look at those squirrels! They're going	6	Olly is getting	on his bike.
		the grass to collect nuts.		But he's not coming	
	2	When I go jogging I run		cycling to the park.	
		the woods, the river and	7	그녀장 그래? 그렇는 그	the
		the bridge.		window.	
	3	Look at that hot air balloon floating	8	Excuse me, how can I get	to the hospital
		our house! It's quite low.		here?	ŗ
	4	The bride got the car and went	9	We should move	the stage so
	0.000	the church.	10.75	we can hear the music be	
	5	I saw them walking the new	10	0/2/09/2045 D14/09 - 2407/4/2009 E-200	
	7	Thai restaurant last night.	.0	superstitious!	

Imperative

The affirmative imperative of the second person, singular and plural, is formed with the infinitive of the verb without *to*. The subject is not expressed.

Answer the door!

Leave the room!

The negative imperative of the second person, singular and plural, is formed with don't + the infinitive of the verb without to.

Don't talk to me!

Don't touch!

The affirmative imperative of the first person plural is formed with let's + the infinitive of the verb without to.

Let's have a party!

The negative imperative of the first person plural is formed with *let's not* or *don't let's* + infinitive of the verb without *to*.

Don't let's do our homework now!

Let's not leave late!

The imperative is used:

- to give instructions on how to do something Press the button!
- to give warning or advice Be careful!
- to ask or tell someone to do something Call the police! Talk quietly!
- to suggest what you and somebody else should or should not do
 Let's take the car! (I think we should take the car.)
 Let's not open the door! (I don't think we should open the door.)

Note!

We can use let + pronoun + infinitive of the verb (without to) when we are asking permission to do something for someone or when we are telling someone to do something.

Let me carry that for you.

Let him tell the story.

1	Change the sentences using the affirmative or negative imperative as in the examples.
	Then listen and check.

1	You must put on your coat. Put on your coat!	7	You should brush your teeth.
2	You mustn't talk so loudly. Don't talk so loudly!	8	You mustn't take away these folders.
3	You mustn't take off your shoes.	 9	You should wake up early tomorrow.
4	You mustn't point at people.	· 10	You mustn't copy the person next to you.
5	You shouldn't chew gum in class.		You must leave the room.
6	You must clean up this mess.	: 12	You shouldn't bite your nails.

2 624 Before leaving on a business trip, Mrs Hargrove left her son a note. Complete the sentences using the verbs below in the affirmative or negative imperative. Then listen and check your answers.

ph	one	eat	open	put	wash	close	forget	take out	fold	invite	-lock
Dear	Paul,						5		thef	loors.	
Here's	s a list	ofthin	gs your	nust			6		your	clothes.	
reme	mber.						7		the	doorto	
1	Dor	't forge	t to fee	ed the t	turtles.			strangers			
2	Loc	k	_ the d	oor and	1		8		any t	friends.	
	1		_ the w	indows	when you	u	9		me e	very day.	. My
	-	out.						phone num	iber is C	77398	76248.
3	_		_ fruit a	and veg	jetables		10		_ the r	rubbish.	
	eve	ry day.									
-					12.04						
4	_	au ach a	The state of the s	lates in	the			See you in			
4	_	nwashe	_ the pl rafter n		the				a week. ove, Mui		
mplet gative (do) <u>Let's</u> (try)	dislocation disloc	followi mperati omewor homew ye up) X	ng senterive of the vork. Let's	ences value verb		sic.	5 I'm 6 (ren 7 (leav		ive (🗸) lost. (a	or sk) for d terrible s	tate. 🗶

4 Rewrite the following sentences.

3

- I think we should go to bed now.
 Let's go to bed now!
 I don't think we should eat any m
- 2 I don't think we should eat any more. Let's not / Don't let's eat any more!
- 3 I think we should go shopping.
- I think we should pull up all the weeds in the garden.
- 5 I don't think we should shout.
- 6 I don't think we should switch off the lights.
- 7 I think we should finish our project today.
- 8 I don't think we should throw water balloons at them.
- **5** Rewrite the following sentences as in the example. Then listen and check.
 - I think you should allow her to borrow your jumper.

Let her borrow your jumper.

- 2 I think you should allow him to stay out late.
- 3 I think you should allow me to give you a makeover.
- 4 I think you should allow Kate to go swimming.
- 5 I think you should allow them to ride their bikes to school.
- 6 I think you should allow him to have a snack.

the whole
say.
one.
ntil tomorrow.
ents to sit
to be so noisy.
####################################
p his clothes.
run in the
one sentence

Countable and uncountable nouns; Collective nouns; Compound nouns

Countable nouns have a singular and plural form. This is because we can count these things.

a dog → two dogs

an umbrella → five umbrellas

a student → some students

Uncountable nouns have only a singular form. We do not usually count these things and we cannot use a or an with them.

silver, water, milk, happiness, honesty, swimming, listening, food

This is delicious cheese.

Have you got time?

Many nouns can be used as **countable** or as **uncountable nouns**. Usually there is a difference in meaning.

The window is made of glass. (Uncountable)

I'll have two glasses of water, please. (Countable)

Have you got any orange juice? (Uncountable)

Can I have two glasses of orange juice? (Countable)

Other examples include: paper, wood, potato...

Some **uncountable nouns** are used only in the plural form. They have no singular form with the same meaning and cannot be used with numbers.

I love clothes. (Not: A clothe or three clothes.)

binoculars, groceries, arms, goods, thanks, police, pyjamas, scissors, trousers...

Some nouns have the same form for the singular and the plural.

sheep, deer, salmon, trout, pork...

Some nouns are singular even if they end in -s and therefore take a singular verb.

Darts is a fun game.

Other examples include news, maths, physics, billiards, fish and chips...

Note!

The following nouns are **uncountable** in English but they may be **countable** in your language! accommodation, bread, advice, information, furniture, luggage, money, progress, spaghetti, work, homework, traffic, rain, news, noise, paper, fruit, hair...

Some **uncountable nouns** can be made **countable** by putting them into containers, servings or parts. a piece of news, a game of billiards, a cup of coffee, a slice of bread, a sheet of paper, a piece of advice, three bottles of water, two packets of crisps...

Collective nouns

In English, singular nouns like *family, team, government*, which refer to groups of people, can be used either with singular or with plural pronouns. Singular forms are more common when the group is seen as an impersonal unit. Plural forms are more common when the group is considered as a collection of people considered as individuals.

The average French family has four members.

My family have bought a new flat. They decided the other one was too small.

Note!

Some collective nouns can only be plural (police, people etc.)

Compound nouns

Compound nouns are nouns made up of two or more elements.

toothache, mother-in-law, travel agent, a five-litre bottle, chicken soup...

Wı	rite whethe	r the followi	ng words are o	ountable	(C) or	uncountab	le (U).		
1	milk	U			12	blood			
2	girl	C			13	music			
3	poetry				14	ice	8		
4	USB stick				15	dress			
5	orange	-			16	umbrella			
6	air				17	darkness			
7	mountain				18	tennis			
8	artist				19	butter			
9	computer				20	tea			
10	book				21	shop			
11	rain				22	cheese			
	ural forms o	od items from of the countal neef bread milk pork		se chic	ken		mon lettu	rite the singular ce peas peach	and
		mmx poin	Ties summe		to p	usta tana	Jognani	peucii	
C	Countable				Unc	ountable			
C	lemon/lemo	ons			butte	er			
_									
-					-				
Un 1		correct answ	ver. wise. He alway:		11	The police	has I have	arrested the thie	f
-		ood <u>advice</u> /		•	12			of sheep I sheeps	
2	•		garlic for my re	cino	12	that hill.	e are a rot	oi sheep i sheeps	OII
3			ood news to tel		13		i got mo a /	- glass of water,	
4		~	ast potatoes / p	•	13	please.	get me u /	giass of water,	
7			Sunday lunch.		14		g for work	works	
5			g experience /		15	I've found	•	WOTKS.	
,		es during my 1	•		16		1.50	/ - beautiful weat	ther
6		a great time	1 10 0 00		10	lately.	ii iiaviiig u	beautiful wear	illei
7			a note, but first	1	17		do an / - ov	cellent progress.	
		et of / - pape		S. (1)	18			ch furniture in thi	
8		ble / troubles			10	room.	ure too mut	an runniture in till	3
0	exercises.	ole / Houbles	innaming my		19		/ Vegetable	s are very import	ant in
9		e is / are dow	vnstairs		19	a healthy		s are very import	ant III
10	1707000		house <i>is / are</i> n	nade	20	55		ickly as there wa	sn't
.0		od and iron /		iuuc	20		fics / traffic.		Jii t

1	1 paper / a piece of paper			5	a coin /	money		
	A magazine			er.				
	I wrote my s			And the second second second second		0.5		
2	an item of l	uggage / lı	ıggage		6	an adve	rtisement	/ advertising
3	coffee / a cu	up of coffe	e		7	cake / c	akes	
4	a piece of ir	nformation	/ informa	ation	- 8	glasses	glass	
	3				-0 -0	-		
Co	omplete the e	xpression	s below v	with the foll	owing wo	rds.		
		a jar	a loaf	a packet	a bottle	a slice	a box	a cup
		0.000	a gla	ss a bar	a tube	a can	a tin	
1	a glass	of I	emonade		7			of crisps
2	u giuss		oread		8	ST		of matches
3	<u> </u>		oothpaste	ř	9	3-		of marmalade
4					10	8		of cola
			200					
					200			
5		of t			11 12			of beans of ham
5 6	atch a word i	of t	ea soap	ne in colum	11 12	т сотро	and noun	of beans
5 6 Ma	atch a word i ith the meani	of t	ea soap A with o	ne in colum	11 12	т сотро	ınd noun	of beans of ham
5 6 Ma		of t	ea soap A with o	ne in colum	11 12	т сотро	and noun	of beans of ham
5 6 Ma		of to of some of some of some of the	ea soap A with o		11 12 In B to form			of beans of ham
5 6 Ma Wi	ith the meani	of to of some of some of some of the some	ea soap A with o words.		11 12 In B to form	tweight m	eans that	of beans of ham s. Then write sentences
5 6 Ma wi A 1	ith the meani	of to of some of some of some of the some	ea soap A with o words.		11 12 nn B to form	tweight m	eans that	of beans of ham s. Then write sentences someone/thing isn't heav
5 6 Mi Wi A 1 2	ith the meani light bed	of to of some of some of the s	A with o words. shade maste	r	11 12 nn B to form 1 Light 2 3	tweight m	eans that	of beans of ham s. Then write sentences someone/thing isn't heav
5 6 Ma W A 1 2 3	ith the meani light bed head	of to of some of the of some o	A with o words. shade maste side	r	11 12 in B to form 1 Light 2 3 4	tweight m	eans that	of beans of ham s. Then write sentences someone/thing isn't heav
5 6 Ma A 1 2 3 4	ith the meani light bed head ski	of to of some of the of some	A with o words. shade maste side holder	r	11 12 nn B to form 1 Light 2 3 4 5	tweight m	eans that	of beans of ham s. Then write sentences someone/thing isn't heav
5 6 Mi W A 1 2 3 4 5	ith the meani light bed head ski girl	of to of some of the of some	A with o words. shade maste side holder	r	11 12 in B to form 1 Light 2 3 4 5 6	tweight m	eans that	of beans of ham s. Then write sentences someone/thing isn't heav
5 6 Mi A 1 2 3 4 5 6	light bed head ski girl lamp	of to of some of some of some of the some	A with o words. shade maste side holder grocer room shirt	r	11 12 nn B to form 1 Light 2 3 4 5 6 7	tweight m	eans that	of beans of ham s. Then write sentences someone/thing isn't heav
5 6 Ma W A 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	light bed head ski girl lamp tooth	of to of some of the of some of som	A with o words. shade maste side holder grocer room shirt	r	11 12 11 12	tweight m	eans that	of beans of ham s. Then write sentences someone/thing isn't heav
5 6 M: A 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	light bed head ski girl lamp tooth baby	of to of some	A with o words. shade maste holder grocer room shirt weigh	r t	11 12 12 11 12 12 11 12	tweight m	eans that	of beans of ham s. Then write sentences someone/thing isn't heav
5 6 Mi A 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	light bed head ski girl lamp tooth baby dish	of to of some	A with o words. shade maste holder room shirt weigh sitter	r t	11 12 11 12 11 12 11 12 11 12 11 11 11 1	tweight m	eans that	of beans of ham s. Then write sentences someone/thing isn't heav
5 6 Mi A 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	light bed head ski girl lamp tooth baby dish green	of to of some	A with o words. shade maste side procer room shirt weigh sitter washe	r t	11 12 11 11	tweight m	eans that	of beans of ham s. Then write sentences someone/thing isn't heav
5 6 W A 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11	light bed head ski girl lamp tooth baby dish green sweat	of to of some	A with or words. shade maste side holder room shirt weigh sitter washe boots	r t	11 12 11 12 11 12 11 12 11 12 11 12	tweight m	eans that	of beans of ham s. Then write sentences someone/thing isn't heav
5 6 Wi A 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12	light bed head ski girl lamp tooth baby dish green sweat candle	of to of some	A with o words. shade maste side holder room shirt weigh sitter washe point	r t	11 12 11 12 11 12 11 12 11 12 11 12 11 14	tweight m	eans that	of beans of ham s. Then write sentences someone/thing isn't heav

some, any, a few, a little, few, little, no, none

Some and **any** are expressions of indefinite quantity. They can be used with countable and uncountable nouns.

Some is used:

in positive sentences

There's some salt over there.

- when we make a request or an offer and we expect the answer to be yes
 - A Would you like some sugar in your coffee?
 - B Yes, please.
 - A Can you lend me some money, please?
 - B Yes, of course.

Any is used:

· in questions

Do you have any eggs?

Is there any milk in the fridge?

- in negative sentences
 There isn't any milk left.
- in negative-interrogative sentences
 Aren't there any students in the room?
- in sentences expressing doubt
 I don't think we have any money left.
- . in positive sentences in which the meaning is: it's not important which
 - A Which pen do you want?
 - B I don't mind, just give me anyone, thank you.

Something | anything, somewhere | anywhere, somebody | anybody, someone | anyone have the same rules as **some** and **any**.

Instead of some it is possible to use:

- a little, with uncountable nouns
 There's a little coffee left in the pot. Help yourself.
- a few, with countable nouns

 There are a few biscuits in the tin.
- little, meaning not much, with uncountable nouns He eats little meat.
- few, meaning not many, with countable nouns

 There are few people who speak both Chinese and Greek.
- no, to replace not any

There are no rooms left in the hotel.

No animals are allowed here.

- none, to replace not any
 - A Do you have any boots?
 - B No, I have none.

None of the teachers went to the meeting.

1	620	Complete the sent	ences with <i>some</i> or <i>any</i> . T	Then li	sten and check.	
	1	You must tell us	more about	8	You can have	of my
		your adventures in A	isia.		chocolate when you d	on't have
	2	He wants	more dessert. Do		of your	own left.
		we have	left?	9	There aren't	matches left. We
	3	She asked me for	ice, but		must buy	more.
		I didn't have	in the freezer.	10	A Is there anything go	ood to eat?
	4	There is	iced tea in the		B Yes, there's	
		kitchen, but there is:			in the kitchen.	
		coffee.		11	Can you give me	information
	5	You can't have	more		about the Outdoors Ad	
		watermelon because		12	I don't have	time to do more
		for M	ichael.		painting now.	
	6		parmesan on	13		money out
		your pasta?			at the cashpoint?	
	7		flowers, as we	14	1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1	of my DVDs
		don't have	in the garden right		to watch yesterday? I'	
		now.		15		unemployed people
					in your village?	
	1	English and the Control of the Contr	washing on the floor. washing on the floor?	4	There are some beautifu	ui flowers in our garden.
	2	They are buying som		5	There are some herbs	·
		3	·		19-	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	3	There are some eggs	in the fridge	6	We have got two new	·
	3	There are some eggs	ill the mage.	U	we have got two new	teachers this year.
			· ?			·
-	_					
3	ке 1	write the sentences a There is no more wo		6	I have no more energyl	I can't run any further.
	85	There isn't any work			Thave no more energy.	realition any further.
	2	There isn't any ink in		7	They don't eat any me	at at all They're
	۲.	There is no ink in my	50 St	,	vegetarians.	eat at all. They le
	3	THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE	give his students any		vegetarians.	
	3	time to write down t		8	I want no more excus	orl
		time to write down t	ne nomework.		i want no more excus	es: !
	4	I told no one except	Lucy and Luca.	9	We are doing no more today. We're exhauste	
	5	My moped doesn't n	eed any new tyres.	11/2/21	52.	
		<u> </u>		10	There aren't any grap	es on that vine.
					<u></u>	

4	Comp	lete the sentences with some, any or no.		
	1 W	ould you lend me music for	6	Would you like cream with
		y party, please?		your dessert?
		ey told him there were many ghosts in	7	'Were there fingerprints on the
		e castle but he didn't see		glass?,' asked the detective.
		ad tools so I couldn't repair	8	- 1770 1 127 128 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
		y motorbike.		yesterday that today he's got
		rry, I don't have spare		voice.
		ange with me.	9	It's a shame she never brings
		l like shoes to match my bag.		souvenirs back from her trips.
		you have in the shop at the	10	He grows beautiful tulips in his garden and
		oment?		always gives me
5	5.00-530-531-1 3 101	lete with a little, little, a few or few.	_	
		n I have more sugar in my a, please?	5	He was a lonely man. He had friends.
		is known about Shakespeare's	6	Put olive oil in the pan before
	100	ivate life.	O	you add the onions.
		e shop isn't very busy. There are only	7	They are spending days in
		people waiting to pay.		Tuscany.
		ere are sweets in my pocket.	8	She had money left when she
		sweets in my pocket.	Ü	returned from travelling.
6	27	Complete the conversation below. Then list	on and	chack
U	• • (complete the conversation below. Then fish	en anu	check.
	Dad	Hi, Alex. I'm at the local greengrocer's but I Can you go to the kitchen and tell me what	0.00	70 ST 10 ST
	Alex	Yes, sure. One minute. Right, what do you w		
	Dad	2/4		
	Alex			
		There isn't (4) broccoli, either.		
		we need (6) cartons of apple ju		
		(8) strawberry yogurts left. Ton		
	Dad	OK. And what about food from the store cu		
	Alex	Well, we've got (9) pasta left, l		
		(10) fresh pasta. There are (11)		
	Dad	Is there (12) milk?		
	Alex	No, we've got (13) We've also	only go	ot (14) coffee left, so get
		some of that.		
	Dad	Anything else?		
	Alex	Yeah, there's (15) ice cream in	the fre	ezer. You know I love ice cream!
	Dad	OK, OK, I'll pick you up (16) C	hocola	te, right?
	Alex	Of course! Thanks dad!		

much, many, a lot (of), too, so (...that), 18 **How questions**

	1
Much and many are generally used in questions and nouns and many with countable nouns.	d negative sentences, much with uncountable
How much fruit do you have? I don't have much homework to do. Do you have many relatives? There aren't many parks in my town.	
A lot (of) is used in affirmative sentences, with cour There are a lot of people in the swimming pool. There was a lot of food at the party.	ntable and uncountable nouns.
Note! A lot can be used without a noun. Terry gave me some more badges. Now I have a lot.	
Sometimes much or a lot mean often . <i>I eat out a lot</i> . (= I eat out often.) <i>He doesn't exercise much</i> . (= He doesn't exercise of	ten.)
Note! A lot is two words. It is not spelt <i>alot</i> .	
Too is used to mean more than necessary. He drinks too much cola. (= more cola than necessar My soup is too hot to eat. (= hotter than I like it.)	ry.)
So (that) is used to indicate a result. He watches so many horror movies (that) he has nig I drink so much coffee (that) I can't sleep at night.	htmares.
 How questions How far is used when we want to know the distant A How far is (it to) the hospital? B About two miles from here. 	ce.
 How long is used to ask about a period/duration of A How long have you lived here? B For five months. 	f time.
 How often is used when we want to know the free A How often do you visit your grandparents? B Once a week. 	quency with which something happens.
 How many is used when we want to know the num A How many dogs do you have? B One. 	mber.
• How much is used when we want to know the qua How much do you weigh? Sixty kilos.	antity.
Complete with much, many or a lot (of).	
 There weren't people at the theatre. 	7 This printer uses ink.
2 It cost me money to buy this necklace.	8 There's so traffic on the road.
3 Janet drinks water every day.	I don't think we'll arrive on time.
4 They're quiet people. They never say	9 I didn't send emails when I was on
5 I put sugar in my coffee. Maybe too	holiday.
¥	10 I cut my finger but fortunately, I didn't lose

blood.

6 There's not _____ to do in this town.

2 C	omplete the sentences	with the	missing	words or	phrases	from	the box	
-----	-----------------------	----------	---------	----------	---------	------	---------	--

	:	some (x2)	any (x3) too loud	too late too hot			too big too far	too cold		
1	Can we open t	he window	? It's <u>too</u>	hot	8	I don	't like the c	olour of y	our jump	er. It's
2	He works	. H	e needs a h	oliday.	9	Don't	buy that s	hirt. It's		for
3	The music at t	he concer	t was			you.	times in the second	_		
	and I came ho				10	I don	't have		stories to	tell you
4	My cousins ha	ve lots of a	nimals but	we			my trip.			5
	don't have				11	They	arrived at	the station	1	and
5	Take the car. I	t's	to wal	k.			d their trai			
6		oil ar	nd vinegar v	vith my	12	I'd lo	ve	pizza	but I do	n't want
	French fries, p		(6/2)				fizz			
7	It's	to go out	without a j	acket!						
ъ.	••									
ке	write sentences		example.							
1	How cold it is!				4		funny.			
	It's so cold that					(She'	s)			
	jumpers on!					10.				
2					5	-	arden is fu			
	(He's)			<u>i</u>		(The	re are so m	any)		
3	How big is this	park.			6	They	chat a lot i	n class.		
	(It's)					1000	y)			
Co	mplete the que		much, ma	<u>2</u> .	ar or	long.				
1								furnitur	e do you	have in
	concert?	- Andrews Apriles					bedroom?	- Care Contract Contract Contract	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
2	How	languag	ges does he	speak?	9	How		_ do you	exercise?	
3	How				10					
	work?					the sv	wimming p	ool?		
4	How	is a cup	of coffee a	nd a	11	How		homew	ork did	
	pizza?					Mrs V	Villiams giv	ve you?		
5	How	do you	go to the de	entist's?	12				u had yo	ur dog?
6	How				13					
	Australia?						end?		× .	
7	How	is the p	ost office fr	om	14	How		times h	ave you b	een to
	here?						ym this we			
						-				

5 Complete the dialogue with *a lot of, much* or *many*. Then listen and check. Sometimes more than one solution is possible.

Andrew	Let's have a few friends over for something to eat.				
Beth	Great idea. What should we cook?				
Andrew	I have my mother's recipe for shepherd's pie.				
Beth	Perfect! Let's make a list of things to buy. How (1) beef do we need?				
Andrew	Half a kilo.				
Beth	How (2) onions?				
Andrew	Two.				
Beth	Do we need (3) carrots?				
Andrew	No, not (4) Only four.				
Beth	And mushrooms?				
Andrew	We'll need (5) them.				
Beth	And how (6) flour?				
Andrew	About 100 grams. Then, we'll also need (7) potatoes, but not				
	(8) butter.				
Beth	And cheese. Will we need (9) cheese?				
Andrew	No, not (10)				
Beth	Okay. I've written it all down. I hope I can find all the ingredients at the supermarket.				

6 Write questions to match the answers. Use your imagination.

1	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	8	·
	No, he doesn't have much homework.		It takes about twenty minutes by train.
2	?	9	?
	It's about 15 miles from my house.		It costs £40 at the box office.
3	?	10	?
	No, he doesn't help me much in the evening.		Two dogs and a cat.
4	?	11	?
	I go jogging about twice a week.		No, not much. It rains more in the winter.
5	?	12	?
	We've got a lot in the fridge.		Yes, there is a lot of traffic on the road today.
6	?	13	?
	She swims about 2 km everyday.		No, he drinks very little coffee.
7	?	14	?
	No there aren't many cabins in the mountains		Not long! Only two months until our trip

other(s), another, else; every, each; all, whole; both, either, neither

Other (pronoun and adjective), others (pronoun)

Where are the other photos?

He never thinks of others.

Another (pronoun and adjective) can mean an additional / an extra one, and is used with singular countable nouns.

Please, do have another!

Can I have another glass of orange juice, please?

Indefinite pronoun + else. We use else to mean more or different after: somebody, something...; anybody, anything...; everybody, everything...; nobody, nothing...; who, what, why, when, how; whatever, whenever...; little; much.

I'm sorry. I mistook you for someone else. (a different / another person)

What else did you buy? (What did you buy in addition?)

Every (adjective) is used with singular nouns to talk about three or more people or things. In many cases, both **every** and **each** (see below) can be used without much difference of meaning.

Every is commonly used when we are thinking of people or things together, in a group and often suggests **without exception**.

The teacher paid attention to every student.

Each (adjective and pronoun) is normally used with singular nouns to talk about two or more people or things. We prefer to use **each** when we are thinking of things or people separately, one at a time. She had a shopping bag in each hand.

Each person, in turn, went to talk to the teacher.

All (adjective and pronoun) and **every** (see above) can both be used to talk about people or things in general, or about members of a group.

- All = entire, whole. She was here all day.
- All + plural nouns (= more than two). All the lights were out.
- All + of All (of) the food was in the basket.

Whole can be used with singular or plural nouns to mean complete, entire.

Jane spent the whole week in bed.

Whole fields of corn were destroyed.

Note!

We never use whole with uncountable nouns.

He gave me all the information.

Both (of) (adjective and pronoun) + plural

She has eaten both pieces of cake.

Both... and...

She's both intelligent and funny.

Either (adjective) + singular noun to mean one or the other.

Come Monday or Tuesday. Either day is fine with me.

Either ... or ...

You can either have coffee or tea.

Either you tell her or I will.

Neither (adjective) + singular noun to mean not one and not the other.

Monday or Tuesday? Sorry, I'm afraid neither day is possible.

Neither... nor is used to join two negative ideas.

Neither Ivan nor Alex was at home.

Neither... of + plural.

Neither of us saw the movie.

1	Complete the sentences with either other(s) or	another.			
	1 Do you have any shoes to lend me?	5	The doctor said I needed to week.	stay in bed	
100	2 Some people were dancing. Some were	6	Some people like skiing,	like	
	eating were talking.		playing tennis.		
	3 That cake was delicious. Can I have	7	Could you bring us	chair? My	
	piece, please?		friend is joining us soon.		
	4 I don't like these books. Do you have any	8	This chemist's is closed but	I'm sure we ca	
	?		find that is ope	en.	
2	Complete the sentences with an indefinite pron	oun (son	nebody, anything) + else.		
	1 Have you lived anywhere else in your life?		Haven't you met	here	
1	2 Frank can't bring it but he asked	W.20	today?		
	to bring it for him.	6	I don't like fish. I hope they	re serving	
	3 We go to that restaurant all the time. I'd				
	love to go for a change.	7	A Is comin	g?	
	4 I have everything I need. I don't need		B No. All the guests have arrived.		
	:	8	Do you think we should buy		
			to eat for the		
3	Complete the sentences with a question word (what, wh	10) + else.		
	1 I'm going out to get you the newspaper.	4	If we can't get together tomo	orrow,	
	What else do you need?		can we meet?		
	2 I don't like it here, but can we	5	I love you of course!	would I	
	go?		do it? Only because I love ye		
	3 can he get here? He'll have to	6	do you think w	ould like to be	
	drive.		in the school show?		
4	Complete the sentences with each or every.				
	1 We go to school day.	1			
10	0				

3 We loved ______ second of the film.

_____ of my two sisters has her

The policeman spoke to ______ person

____ member of my family works.

I wake up ____ morning at 7 o'clock.

4 My mother gave _____ of us

some cake.

in the room.

own car.

5

6



1	Is your family going on									
	holiday?									
2										
3	1									
4										
	last week.									
v	Write sentences with both andor neither r									
1	1 I love swimming. I love playing tennis.									
	I love both swimming and playing tennis.									
2	James has been to Japan. He's been to China as well.									
3	Davina doesn't like cheese. She doesn't like fish.									
1	Do you want to see Man of Steel or The									
	Great Gatsby? I want to see neither of the films.									
2	I want to see neither of the films. I don't want to see either of the films.									
3	I want to see neither of the films. I don't want to see either of the films. Which of the two paint colours do you like? Which of the songs will you download from									
	I want to see neither of the films. I don't want to see either of the films. Which of the two paint colours do you like? Which of the songs will you download from the Internet?									
3	I want to see neither of the films. I don't want to see either of the films. Which of the two paint colours do you like? Which of the songs will you download from the Internet?									
3	I want to see neither of the films. I don't want to see either of the films. Which of the two paint colours do you like? Which of the songs will you download from the Internet? Does he eat meat and fish?									

- they had been waiting a long time.

 I spend _____ penny on clothes.

 There's still a _____ week before school starts.

 They ate the _____ box of cookies.
- 4 She hates dancing. She hates parties.
- 5 I like your dog. He's sweet. He's affectionate.
- 6 Harriett is interested in History. She is also interested in Art.



Genitive form with 's; whose

The **genitive form with** 's is used to indicate possession or connection. It can be used with:

- people and animals Vicky's cat is black. The cat's fur is soft.
- organisations, towns and nations
 Hong Kong's skyscrapers are incredible!

 The school's new headteacher.
- certain expressions of time Yesterday's weather was really warm.
- indefinite pronouns
 I found someone's jacket.

This is how we form the genitive 's:

- after a singular noun, add 's Jessica's mother is very nice.
- after a plural noun ending in -s, add only ' My friends' parents are coming too.
- after a plural noun that does not end in -s, add 's Children's clothes are expensive.
- singular nouns ending in -s, add 'or 's Keats' / Keats's poetry is beautiful.
- when two or more people possess or are connected with the same thing, add 's after the second name Hayley and Paul's maths teacher is great.
- when the thing possessed is obvious, it is usually not repeated *That is Julia's book and this is Megan's*.

Whose is used to ask who the person or thing belongs to. It can be used as a determiner or as a pronoun.

- A Whose book is this? (determiner)
- B It's mine.
- A Whose is that book? (pronoun)
- B It's mine.

Note!

Do not confuse whose (possessive) and who's (= who is or who has).

1 Rewrite these sentences using the genitive form with 's.

- London has got one main river called the River Thames.
 - London's main river is the River Thames.
- 2 The weather was really terrible last week.
- 3 Tom broke the sunglasses that belonged to Georgia.
- 4 My brother has got red hair, but I have got brown hair.
- 5 John has got a really big bedroom at the university residence.
- 6 The cat got wet in the rain and has now got wet fur.

2	Tra	ansform the following using the ge	nitive form w	ith 's	
	1	The technology magazines belong to	the	5	Kim and William have got a new phone
		teacher.			number.
	2	These are the teacher's technology n Mr and Mrs Ross live in that house		6	My sister has got a new tablet computer
	2	Mr and Mrs Ross live in that house		6	My sister has got a new tablet computer.
	3	The university is offering some new		7	The airport has just opened a new terminal building.
	4	The United Nations has its headque New York.	arters in	8	My grandmother has got a great recipe for
		New Tork.		0	toffee apples.
3	29	Write sentences choosing eleme	ents from the	three	columns. Then listen and check.
	Α		В		С
	1	Germany	room		Paris
	2		capital		Hyde Park
	3		food bowl		competed in the Olympics
	4		new rules		has had over 20,000 views
	5				in the kitchen
			son		
	6	•	website		black, red and gold
	7		flag		on the second floor
	8	My brother biggest park			unpopular
	Germany's flag is black, red and gold.			5	
	2			6	
	3			7	6
	4	·		8	·
4	(30	Y:	- XX '4 - C - II -		
4	4	Listen and answer the questions			
	1	What colour is Samantha's bikini?		5	Whose paper bag is it?
	2	Whose is the one-piece bathing su	it?	6	What isn't Julie's?
	3	Whose thermos is it?	7	7	Whose lunch is it?
	4	Whose brown towel is it?		8	Whose sunglasses are they?
-	***				
5	W	rite questions for these answers.		n pa	92
	1	Whose laptop is that?		5	7
	_	That laptop? It's Janet's.	-	•	That bike? I don't know.
	2	TL 4: - 4: 2 Tl		6	?
	2	Those flipflops? They are mine.	3	-	Those batteries? They're mine.
	3	This smartphone? It's Harry's		7	? These exam results? They're David and Lisa's.
	4	This smartphone? It's Harry's.	7	8	These exam results? They re David and Lisa s.
	4	These glasses? They're my mother		٥	That photo? That's my grandparent's.
		These glasses: They le my mother	J.		mat photo: That a my granuparent a.

Reflexive pronouns; each other; one another; get + adjectives

SUBJECT PRONOUNS	REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS
l	myself
ou	yourself
ne e	himself
he	herself
t	itself
ve .	ourselves
ou	yourselves
hey	themselves

Note that the forms for the 2nd person singular and plural are different.

Reflexive pronouns are used when the direct or indirect object of the verb is the same as the subject.

The boss gave himself a big pay increase.

I made myself a sandwich.

It's annoying. Simon always talks about himself.

Reflexive pronouns are used:

- to emphasise that someone did something personally
 You cooked the whole dinner yourself? That's impressive!
- with by to mean alone
 I learned to drive by myself. (No one taught me or helped me.)

Verbs that describe actions that people usually do to themselves do not take reflexive pronouns. *I wash and dress before having breakfast.* [We usually wash and dress our own person.]

Other verbs that do not take reflexive pronouns are: to fall in love with, to feel, to meet, to get up, to hurry, to relax.

Each other usually expresses a reciprocal relationship between two things or people. *My mother and father love each other.*

One another usually expresses a relationship between two or more things or people. When the teacher gave the test results, the students looked at one another in surprise.

Get + adjective means become.

Your son is getting taller and taller.

It's getting late.

1	Complete ea	ch sentence	e using	g a refl	exive p	ronou	n and	one of	the verbs b	elow i	n the corre	ct tense.
				(d. 10)	100	0.22						

		kick teach lock	look after	hurt	burn	blame	look at	
	1	Be careful. The soup is very hot. burn yourself.		6	some app		ooks and dow	
	2	They left their keys inside the ca	r, which	7	English.	mi abaut	the cat It can	
	3	meant they'd out. It's not his fault. He shouldn't		7	Don t wor	ry about	the cat. It can	
	4	I'm such a fool. I could		8	Luca is so	vain, he'	s always	
	5	Megan fell off her bike but fortur didn't			S .	ir	the mirror.	
2	An	swer these questions using a ref	exive pronou	n.				
- 20		A Who styled your hair for you?			A Can voi	u get me	a glass of wate	er?
		B No one. I styled it myself .						
	2	A Who bought you the newspap		7	A Who di	d Rita see	e in the mirror	?
		B Nobody. I		-	B She			_
	3	A Who told you Maria was leavi	ng?	8			d man talking	to?
	4	B Maria A Does Mrs Wright have someon	ne to clean	9	B He		heir house?	
	S-10	her house?	ic to cicum	-			men nouse.	
		B No, she		10			wo tickets?	
	5	A Do you want me to wash it for	you?		B Why do	n't you _		?
		B No, I'll						
3	Co	mplete the sentences with $by + a$	reflexive pro	noun.				
	1	We learned to drive by ourselves	0.73		Children s	houldn't	be left	in
	2				the swimr			
		Fortunately, my r	neighbour	5			idying with ot	
		helped me.		2	She prefer	s studyin	g	—:
	3	I went over to talk to Rick who w	as sitting	6			e left the dog	
					aione. it s	never be	en	before.
4	31	Complete these sentences with	n the verbs be	low. Us	se reflexiv	e pronou	ns only when	necessary
	Th	en listen and check.						
		dried concentrate	enjoyed rel	ax w	vash sha	ving n	nade met	
	1	Tom has decided to grow a bear	d, so he's	5	After work	l only w	ant to	
		stopped <u>shaving</u> .		6			evening. We r	
	2	He got out of the shower, took a	towel and	V				uses
	_			7			0	or make
	3	I tried to read but I just couldn't			the bed th			onular
		My husband and I		8	one has _		very p	opular

5	Complete the sentences with each other or
	one another.

1	People give presents to _	one another	_ on
	special occasions.		

- 2 My sister and I always fight with
- 3 My parents and teacher haven't met yet.
- 4 How long have we known ?
- 5 The two dogs hurt _____ fighting.
- 6 Susan's my closest friend. We tell everything.
- 7 Everyone in my family helps
- 8 Anna and I stood looking at for several minutes. I hadn't seen her in years.
- 9 The rival teams hadn't played against _____ since last year.
- 10 Jade and I call every day.



6 Complete the sentences with get + one of the following adjectives.

	warmer too difficult more intere angry wet boring		worried dressed hungry y better upset	
1	Wow! This story is <u>getting more interesting</u> by the minute.			
2	I can't tell her now. She won't be happy and I don't want her	8	my mother We when the childre make too much noise.	n
3	It's 9.30 p.m. and I haven't had dinner yet.	9	I was still wh the school bus passed outside my house!	ien
4	Shall we leave? The party is	10	I know you've been ill. I hope you are now.	
5	After a lot of cold weather, at last the weather is	11	Don't walk in the mud. You'll	
6	These exercises are for me to do without help.	12	It's raining. If they go out without an umbrella, they'll	

Comparatives and superlatives of adjectives

How to form the comparative and superlative

Adjectives with one syllable

 With most adjectives with one syllable we add -er, -est old → older → the oldest hard → harder → the hardest

 With one syllable adjectives ending in -e, add -r, -st large → larger → the largest

With one syllable adjectives with one vowel + one consonant, double the consonant and add -er,
 -est

 $fat \rightarrow fatter \rightarrow the fattest$

Adjectives with two syllables

With adjectives with two syllables ending in -y, change -y to -i and add -er, -est
happy → happier → the happiest
easy → easier → the easiest

 With most other two-syllable adjectives we use more, the most tiring → more tiring → the most tiring modern → more modern → the most modern polite → more polite → the most polite

 With a few two-syllable adjectives both -ier, -iest, more, the most is possible shallow → shallower/more shallow → the shallowest/the most shallow

Adjectives with three or more syllables

 With adjectives with three or more syllables we use more, the most interesting → more interesting → the most interesting colourful → more colourful → the most colourful

Irregular comparatives and superlatives

ADJECTIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
good bad far old late near little much/many	better worse farther/further older/elder later/the latter nearer less more	the best the worst the farthest/the furthest the oldest/the eldest the latest/the last the nearest/the next the least the most

- farther / the farthest is used for distances
 Is it safe to drive any farther?
- further / the furthest is used in the sense of more Do you need any further information?
- elder / the eldest are usually used for members of the same family My elder brother is 25.
- less / the least + adjective / adverb
 I wish he would drive less quickly.

- the latest is used in the sense of the most recent Have you heard their latest CD?
- the latter is used in the sense of the second

 The writer had two books published. The latter of the two was more popular.
- the nearest means the closest in terms of distance Where's the nearest petrol station?
- the next means the one that follows What did he do the next morning?

We use the **comparative** to compare two things *His house is bigger than mine*.

Note!

After a comparative we normally use **than**. The pronoun that follows is generally the personal object pronoun in informal English and the personal subject pronoun + auxiliary in formal English.

He is taller than me. (informal)

He is taller than I am. (formal)

To say that something increases or decreases we can use a comparative + comparative.

The weather is getting worse and worse.

This book is getting more and more interesting.

To say that two things influence each other or one thing causes another, we can use **the** + comparative clause.

The more you sleep, the lazier you get.

The older the boy gets, the taller he grows.

Note!

Of the two, the blue one is the cheaper.

Before a comparative we can use: (very) much, a lot, a little, a bit, rather or far.

Tony is very much / far fatter than Joe.

We use the **superlative** to compare one person or thing in a group with two or more persons or things in the same group. Before a superlative, we generally use **the**.

Which of these sweaters do you like the best?

Before a superlative we can use by far and easily.

She is by far the nicest person I know.

1 Complete the sentences with the comparative form of the words in the box.

		large	big	tall	relaxing	slowly	warm	interesting	playful	
1	A tree is			_ than	a plant.	5	Which	suitcase shou	ld we take?	Let's take
2	This skirt	is too tig	ght. Ha	ve you	got a		the		one.	
			size?			6	Listeni	ng to music is		than
3	The weatl	her is us	ually _		in		exercis	sing.		
	the summ	er than	in the	winter.		7	This p	uppy looks		than that
4	My Maths	lessons	are _		tha	n	one.			
	my Histor	y lesson	s.			8	You m	ust drive		_!

2	Us	e the comparative form of the words in brac	kets	to co	omplete the sentences.
	1	Try on this sweater. It's (soft) than		5	She's the (strict) of the two teachers.
		that one.			Car racing is (dangerous) than
	2	Listen to your sister. She's (clever)			swimming.
		than you.		7	I need (much) information before
	3	He's thirty but he looks (young)			choosing.
		My room is (tidy) than your room.		8	Jean is (funny) than Mary.
3	W	rite sentences using the comparative form.			
	1	Ferrari / expensive / Fiat		4	lead / heavy / plastic
	2	mountain / high / hill		5	silk / soft / canvas
	3	adult / old / child		6	Finland / cold / Greece
	1 2 3 4 5	A (much) complicated an exercise is (hard) you study English (high) the inflation rate gets (old) you get (much) you eat (little) we use cars	a b c d	B	(long) it takes to do. (difficult) it is to find a job. (good) you will speak it. (fat) you get. (good) it is for the environment. (much) prices go up.
	1	The more complicated an exercise is, the longe	r it to	akes	to do.
	2	T			
	3	o <u> </u>			
	4				
	5				
	6	n .			
5		e a bit, a little, much, a lot, or far + the adjecter necessary.	tive	/adv	erb in the comparative form and than
	1	Harriet's hair is long. Jane's hair is short. (long) Harriet's hair is much longer than Jane's		4	She felt tired this morning. Now, she doesn't feel so bad. (well)
	2	My flat has four rooms. George's flat has			icci so Dau. (Well)
	2	five rooms. (small)		5	Dave gets average grades. Gina gets excellent grades. (good)
				.,,,,,,,	
	3	The British Museum was good. The War Museum was incredible. (interesting)		6	The jeans were £60. The shirt was £40 on discount. (expensive)

6	Co	mplete the sentences with a supe	rlative.	-			
	1	Smith is a very common surname	. It's	- A 30		No.	
		probably the most common surn	ame in the				
		United Kingdom.		100		2	
	2	Helen's house is pretty. It's		7			
		l've ever seen.				1	
	3	I can't believe how rude that sho	p assistant				
		was. She must be				13	
		assistant in the shop.					
	4	This is a good restaurant. It's			THE RESERVE		
		in town.		N. V.			
	5	That film was interesting. It was				ζ's	
		the producer	had ever				
		made.					
	6	No one swims at that beach beca	use the				
		water is polluted. It's					
		beach along the coast.					
7	***				ed P. C.		
/	W	rite either the comparative + than	173				
	1	Your car is (fast)			My (old) son is thirty.		
	2	Of the two books, Crime and Pun	ishment is	7	Your homework wasn't done carefully. No	xt	
		(long)			time try to do (good)		
	3	My grandmother makes (good)		8	When you want to buy a car, go to Car		
		biscuits in the	world.		Network. It's (good) ca	ır	
	4	Leonardo da Vinci was one of (in			dealer in town.		
		men in the wo	orld.	9	Have you read her (late)	- 1	
	5	I live (far) from	n my		novel?		
		school than most of my friends b	ut Janet	10	She's been on a diet for a long time and		
		lives (far)			she's getting (thin)		
8	32	Listen to the CD. Circle the wor	rd that you h	ear			
•		<u></u>		cur.	a □ tha lawaret		
	1	a □ long	b 🗆 longer		c I the longest		
	2	a ☐ fast	b 🗆 faster		c the fastest		
	3	a 🗌 tall	b 🗆 taller		c 🗆 the tallest		
	4	a □ nice	b nicer		c 🗆 the nicest		
	5	a □ far	b 🗆 father		c 🗆 the farthest		
	6	a 🗌 far	b 🗌 further		c the furthest		
	7	a \square easy	b 🗆 easier		c 🗆 the easiest		
	8	a □ high	b higher		c 🗆 the highest		
	9	a 🗆 clever	b Cleverer	0	c 🗆 the cleverest		
	10	a \square good	b 🗌 better		$c \square$ the best		

Comparatives / Superlatives with nouns and verbs; less, fewer; the least, the fewest; as ... as

Comparatives

- With nouns: more + noun + than She has more books than Bob.
- With verbs: verb + more + than She reads more than Bob.

Superlatives

- the most + noun
 He has the most money of all.
- verb + the most
 She has eaten the most.

Less (comparative of little); fewer (comparative of few)

less + adjective / adverb / uncountable noun + than

I earn less money than a manager.

verb + less + than

Robert studies less than the other boys.

fewer + countable noun + than

She has fewer problems than you.

Note!

In English the **less** form is not generally used. Instead of saying: *The weather today is less warm than yesterday*, we say: *The weather today is colder than yesterday*. / *It's colder than yesterday*. We can also use **not as... as**: *It isn't as cold as yesterday*.

The least (superlative of little); the fewest (superlative of few)

the least + adjective / adverb

A Which shirt should I buy?

B The least expensive.

the fewest + countable noun

Tony has read the fewest books.

As... as

As + adjective / adverb + as

I am as tall as my mother.

This car isn't as fast as that one.

As much... + uncountable nouns + as

I have as much homework as you.

I don't have as much homework as you.

As many... + countable nouns + as

I've had as many drinks as you.

verb + as much as

He eats as much as I do. / He eats as much as me.

He doesn't eat as much as I do. / He doesn't eat as much as me.

Note!

the same... as

He wears the same size shoes as Jack.

1	Re	write the sentences with more than.		
	1	I read one book every day. Tom reads one book every week. You read more than Tom.	4	This suitcase weighs 25 kg. That suitcase weighs 15 kg.
	2	Harry walks to work twice a week. Joe walks to work once a week.	5	There were fifty people at Hannah's party. There were nineteen people at Kate's party.
	3	My father earns £200 a week. Sam's father earns £400 a week.	6	My new TV is 34 inches wide. My old TV was 30 inches wide.
2		write the sentences about animals using the co	ompara	tive form so that they mean the same
	1	A lizard is less cute than a puppy. A puppy is cuter than a lizard.	4	A rabbit is less scary than a snake.
	2		5	A monkey runs less fast than a cheetah.
	3	A horse is less heavy than an elephant.	6	A brown bear is less endangered than the Siberian tiger.
3	W	rite sentences with <i>fewer</i> or <i>less</i> , following the	e exam	ple.
	1	There are 12 lakes in Belgium. There are 7 lakes in Austria. <u>There are fewer lakes in Austria than in Belgium</u> .	4	There are 60 seconds in a minute. There are 120 seconds in 2 minutes.
	2	There are five bottles on this shelf. There are ten bottles on that shelf.	5	I made five mistakes in the test. Linda made eight mistakes.
	3	This car has damage to its windscreen and door. That car only has damage on the bumper.	6	Emma took 10 photographs of the performance. Joanna took 5 photographs.
4	Co	rrect the mistakes in the sentences.		·
	1	Next month, we will spend fewer money.	4	Fiona's coat looks like yours, but it's not as much nice as yours.
	2	He drinks the more coffee of all of us.	5	You have the most money than Ivan.
	3	She doesn't have so much clothes as she'd like.	6	Kim is the same tall as Michelle.

5 W	rite 9	sentences	comparing	these	two	hotels.
-----	--------	-----------	-----------	-------	-----	---------

	HOLIDAY BLUE HOTEL 2 indoor garages 372 rooms 3 km from town centre 3 restaurants 1 swimming pool 3 tennis courts 2 golf courses 73 employees £175.00 per night	* 1 indoo * 440 roo * 5.5 km town co * 2 restau	from *2 tennis courts	
1 2 3 4				
5 6 7 8 9				
-000	mplete the sentences with as or than.			- 10
1	She's not as pretty her sister.	4	Vera works longer hours Sally.	_
2	Was John's homework better Joe's?	5	I haven't got as much money you.	
3	I go to the same schoolKathy.	6	That boy eats more a adult.	n
Re	write the following sentences with as	as or not as	as.	
1	Dennis is less handsome than Martin. Dennis is <u>not as handsome as Martin.</u> We received a bigger parcel than you.	4	Tom's job is better than Nancy's. Nancy's job is	
	Your parcel wasn't	5	Are you and your brother the same he	
3	Lakes are deeper than rivers. Rivers aren't	6	your brother? David's acting was better than Catheri Catherine's acting	ine's.
	.			vid's.

Past simple to be

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	SHORT FORM
I was	I was not	l wasn't
You were	You were not	You wasn't
He was	He was not	He wasn't
She was	She was not	She wasn't
It was	It was not	It wasn't
We were	We were not	We weren't
You were	You were not	You weren't
They were	They were not	They weren't

INTERROGATIVE	SHORT ANSWERS	NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE
Was I? Were you? Was he? Was she? Was it? Were we?	Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't. Yes, you were. / No, you weren't. Yes, he was. / No, he wasn't. Yes, she was. / No, she wasn't. Yes, it was. / No, it wasn't. Yes, we were. / No, we weren't. Yes, you were. / No, you weren't.	Wasn't I? Weren't you? Wasn't he? Wasn't she? Wasn't it? Weren't we?
Were they?	Yes, they were. / No, they weren't.	Weren't they?

We use the Past simple to talk about completed actions in the past.

Were you at the party last night?

It was a wonderful film.

The weather wasn't very good.

We form **short answers** with Yes, + subject + verb / No, + subject + verb + not (n't)

- A Was he sick?
- B Yes, he was. / No, he wasn't.
- A Were there many people at the party?
- B Yes, there were. / No, there weren't.

1 Complete with was, were, wasn't or weren't.

1	1_	was	ready when they came to pick
	me	up.	
2	The	shops _	full yesterday because
	it	- 10 Ex	the first day of the sales.
3	We		happy to see you last
	we	ek.	
4	We		hungry but we didn't have
	any	thing to	eat.
5	The	еу	in their bedroom. They
		ń is	in the garden because it was
	col	d.	-

6	Rachel	a good employee. She		
	never came to	work on time.		
7	Yes, they	in the kitchen. They		
	ii	n the living room.		
8	When I	young, I		
	always happy.			
9	There	no good shops in town,		
	until they built	t the shopping centre.		
10	They	at the cinema when the		
	earthquake happened.			

2	Co	implete the sentences with the correct form of t	to be in	n the past forms.	
	1	A he at home today?	5	Α	_ there any policemen
		B No, he			ived at the scene?
		He at the office.			firemen.
	2	I think he right when he	6		lots of people at the
	gave the teacher that answer.			concert. It	
	3 A Where you when the lights went out?		7		afraid of cats when
				it	
		B I in the elevator.	8		born in November.
	4	Last year my grandmother	9		pleased with my
	a hundred years old. Quite a record!			work today.	
3	117	rite the affirmative form of the Past simple <i>to b</i>	a tha	n maka tha cantar	acca nogativa interrogativa
3		d negative-interrogative.	e, mei	i make me semei	ices negative, interrogative
			-	-1 1	
	1	He <u>was</u> in Africa last year.	4	The character in	the play very funny.
		He wasn't in Africa last year.			
		Was he in Africa last year?			?
	_	Wasn't he in Africa last year?	-	<u></u>	·
	2	Her mother and aunt in hospital.	5	Ita grea	at noliday.
		?			?
		?			?
	3	Dennis away on an outdoor course.	6	Her friend	a marine biologist.
		·		3	
		<u>:</u>		92	:
		3 		3	
4	W	rite questions and short answers using the wor	ds bel	ow.	
	1	they / on holiday / last August - No / last July	6	they / born / Ital	y - No / Switzerland
		Were they on holiday last August?		273	•
		No, they weren't. They were on holiday last July.			?
	2	he / at the shop / this morning - No / at home		-	
		?			
	3	you / ill - No / tired			Allh
				All	
		?		Birth Co.	
					The Laboratory of the laborato
	4	there / any restaurants - No / a few cafés			
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	100		PARTY SEE
	5	your hair / longer / last year - No / shorter	- 36.13		h_/
	,	your man / tonger / tast your tho / shorter	1 T 1 T	A SHE '	
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	安斯 2.4	Carl Marie 1988	TELEPORT TO THE PARTY OF THE PA

1	I ate a cake. (the cake, delicious - too sweet)	4	I stayed with my relatives. (you, bored / it,
	A Was the cake delicious?		fun)
	B No, it was too sweet.		Α
2	200 Page 1990 Pa		В
	crowded)	5	I had Mexican food. (it, spicy - yes / but
	Α?		delicious)
	В		Α
3	200		В
	interesting - awful)	6	I bought a pair of shoes. (tennis shoes -
	A?		basketball shoes)
	В		A
			В
1	people / very friendly What were the people like?	4	bedrooms / comfortable
	They were friendly.		
2		5	beaches / very clean
-	?	•	
3	weather / very good	6	sea / warm
	?		tribusionalistis - Heavite Street Street
	Vrite questions and answer them using your image		## 1 22 49 40 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5
1	where / you / born	4	how old / your father / last birthday
	A Where were you born?		Α
	B I was born in France.		В
2		5	when / your / last holiday?
	Α?		Α
	В		В
3	where / you / this morning	6	where / you / last weekend
	Α?		Α
	В		В

Past simple

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	SHORT FORM
I walked.	I did not walk.	I didn't walk.
You walked.	You did not walk.	You didn't walk.
He walked.	He did not walk.	He didn't walk.
She walked.	She did not walk.	She didn't walk.
It walked.	It did not walk.	It didn't walk.
We walked.	We did not walk.	We didn't walk.
You walked.	You did not walk.	You didn't walk.
They walked.	They did not walk.	They didn't walk.

INTERROGATIVE	SHORT ANSWERS	NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE
Did I walk?	Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.	Didn't I walk?
Did you walk?	Yes, you did. / No, you didn't.	Didn't you walk?
Did he walk?	Yes, he did. / No, he didn't.	Didn't he walk?
Did she walk?	Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.	Didn't she walk?
Did it walk?	Yes, it did. / No, it didn't.	Didn't it walk?
Did we walk?	Yes, we did. / No, we didn't.	Didn't we walk?
Did you walk?	Yes, you did. / No, you didn't.	Didn't you walk?
Did they walk?	Yes, they did. / No, they didn't.	Didn't they walk?

The form of the **Past simple** is the same for all persons.

The affirmative of regular verbs ends in -ed.

work → worked

The forms of the irregular verbs must be learned by heart.

The **negative** of the Past simple is formed with didn't (= did not) + the infinitive of the verb without to.

The question form is formed with did + the infinitive of the verb without to.

The **negative-interrogative form** is formed with didn't (= did not) + the infinitive of the verb without to.

Spelling exceptions of regular verbs in the Past simple:

- verbs ending in -e add -d dance → danced
- one-syllable verbs (except verbs ending in -x and -w) and two-syllable verbs that have the stress on the last syllable, and end in one vowel followed by one consonant, double the consonant

to drop \rightarrow dropped

to prefer → preferred

- verbs ending in a vowel + -l double the -l
 to travel → travelled
- verbs ending in a consonant + -y change the -y to -i + -ed
 to study → studied
- verbs ending in -c add -k + -ed to panic → panicked

TT1	D .			1
I he	Past	simn	le 19	used:
1 110	I au	SHILL	10 10	useu.

- to express a finished action in the past We went to the cinema yesterday.
- to express actions which follow each other in a story
 I went to the greengrocer's and bought some oranges.
 I took out my wallet and paid.
- for habitual actions in the past When I was young, I played tennis every Saturday.

To form **short answers** in the Past simple we use:

Yes, + subject + did. / No, + subject + didn't.

Did you talk to Nancy? Yes, we did. / No, we didn't.

When we use question words, the word order is:

 question word
 +
 did
 +
 subject
 +
 infinitive

 How much
 did
 it
 cost?

 Where
 did
 you
 go on holiday?

Note!

When the question word is also the subject of the sentence, we do not use *did*. Who finished the cake?

1 Write the Past simple of these regular verbs.

arrest	8 happen
visit	9 ask
apologise	10 question
listen	11 help
underline	12 offer
express	13 assist
show	14 quote
	visit apologise listen underline express

2 Write the Past simple of these irregular verbs.

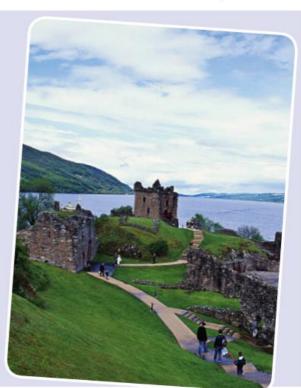
1	break	11 know
2	bring	12 make
3	buy	13 read
4	come	14 say
5	cut	15 see
6	do	16 sing
7	eat	17 take
8	fall	18 tell
9	find	19 win
0	go	20 write

3 Complete the sentences using the affirmative form of the Past simple of these irregular verbs.

1	He			e that he	е		6			Then				or a glass of	
2	The boy			exam y	esterday			orar	nge jui	ice.					
3	We	a	II the in	rregular	verbs		7	This	jacke	et		a	lot o	f money.	
	before startin	g this e	xercise.				8	Mr I	Brown			Gr	eek a	it my	
4	Shakespeare			_ many	beautifu	l		scho	ool.						
	plays.						9	1_			down	on th	e bed	and	
5	The manager	of the	shop							ā	cleen				
											Jaicep.				
	the thieves w						10						a	nest on	
	the thieves w clothes.						10	Last	year,				a	nest on	
34		ho		son	ne		10	Last	year,	a bird			a	nest on	
1 34	clothes.	comple	te the s	son	ne es.		5.0%	Last the	year, branc	a bird	at tree				
1 34	clothes.	comple	te the s	son sentence	ne es. nber		5.0%	Last the Two	year, branc	a bird h of tha	at tree	d			
1	Listen and of Alison was bo	comple rn on th	te the s e 13th o in I urs old v	sentence of Novem Paris unit	es. nber til she		5.0%	Last the Two 20 d	year, branc frienc lays or	a bird h of the ds from n a dese	Madri ert isla	d nd afte	er the	ir boat	
1	Listen and of Alison was bo	comple rn on th _ 10 yea _ to Ker	te the s e 13th c in l ers old v	sentence of Novem Paris unter when he	es. nber til she r parents		3	Two	year, branc frienc lays or	a bird h of the	Madri ert isla fortuna	d nd afte	er thei he res	ir boat cue team	
1 2	Listen and of Alison was bo 1996. She	comple rn on th _ 10 yea _ to Ker I	te the s e 13th o in f ers old v	sentence of Noven Paris unt when he UK spide	es. nber til she r parents rs so		5.0%	Two 20 d	year, branc frienc ays or	a bird h of the ds from n a dese F th	Madri ert isla fortuna nem ali	d nd afte ntely, t ive and	er the he res I well letic (ir boat cue team games, my	
1 2	Listen and of Alison was bo	comple rn on th _ 10 yea _ to Ker I	te the s le 13th d le in I lers old v at in the	entence of Novem Paris unt when he UK spide o do son	es. nber til she r parents rs so nething		3	Two 20 d	friend days or	a bird h of the ds from n a dese F th	Madri ert isla Fortuna nem ali I sumn	d nd afte ately, to ve and ner ath track a	er the he res I well letic g	ir boat cue team games, my eld medals	200

5 Choose the most appropriate verbs to complete the text. Remember to use the Past simple.

in a nice hotel r	near the beach and they	often			
(3)	for long walks by	the lakes. They			
(4)	a lot of local spring water that				
(5)	from the mountai	ns . They also			
(6)	some salmon whi	ch the chef			
(7)	very nicely. They	(8)			
many photos o	n their social media web	site to show their friends			
They (9)		woollen jumper for their			
daughter and a	kilt for their son. They a	ilso			
(10)	to the enchantin	g sound of bagpipes			
during a street	parade. They (11)	the Scots			
very friendly. T	hey (12)	sad when they			
(13)					



6	Re	write the sentences using the Past simple.			
	1	Jack's mum sends him to bed early.	5	That baby always cries.	
		Jack's mum sent him to bed early.		200	
	2	I always go to the cinema on Saturdays.	all day yesterday.		
			6	She sits down every afternoon.	
		last Saturday.			
	3	She has a shower every morning.		after doing the washing-up.	
			7	I often read in bed.	
		this morning.			
	4	She goes horse riding at weekends.		before falling asleep.	
		-	8	My dad always makes the coffee.	
		last weekend.			
7	Ma	ike questions using the words given and answe	er as ir	idicated.	
	1	he / lose / his bags - yes	5	you / stay / at home / last night - yes	
		Did he lose his bags? Yes, he did.		?	
	2	you / catch / a cold - yes	6	you / learn / English / at school - no	
				?	
	3	he / understand / his last grammar lesson - no	7	the bus / arrive / on time - no	
		?		?	
	4	they / spend / their holiday / Holland - yes	8	I / answer / door - yes	
		? .		?	
_					
8	W	rite questions as in the example.			
	1	Mary went to the concert with someone.	4	She walked home.	
		Who (with) did she go with?		Who (with)?	
		Which cinema did she go to?		When?	
		What (see) did she see?		Why ?	
	2	She learned English.	5	The little boy fell over.	
		Where (learn)?		Where?	
		When?		Why?	
		Why?	6	She was hot and drank a lot.	
	3	I saw Terry.		Why (hot)?	
		Where?		How much (drink)	
		When?		What?	
		25,895,600,175		10 minutes (20 min	

Past continuous

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE
I was coming.	I was not coming. / I wasn't coming.	Was I coming?	Wasn't I coming?
You were coming.	You were not coming. / You weren't coming.	Were you coming?	Weren't you coming?
He was coming.	He was not coming. / He wasn't coming.	Was he coming?	Wasn't he coming?
She was coming.	She was not coming. / She wasn't coming.	Was she coming?	Wasn't she coming?
It was coming.	It was not coming. / It wasn't coming.	Was it coming?	Wasn't it coming?
We were coming.	We were not coming. / We weren't coming.	Were we coming?	Weren't we coming?
You were coming.	You were not coming. / You weren't coming.	Were you coming?	Weren't you coming?
They were coming.	They were not coming. / They weren't coming.	Were they coming?	Weren't they coming?

The Past continuous is formed with was / were + verb in base form + -ing.

The Past continuous is used:

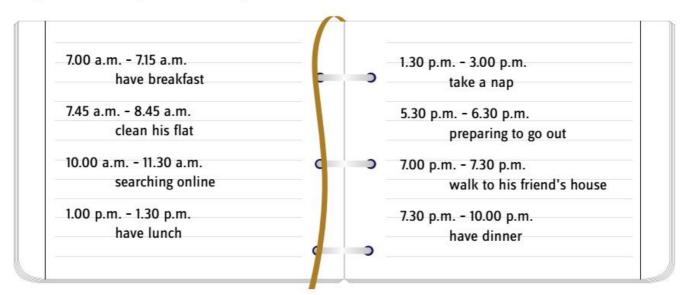
- to express a past activity happening over a period of time (the activity had started but not finished at the time another activity or event occurred)
 I was sleeping when you phoned. (I fell asleep before you phoned.)
- to describe two or more long actions which were happening at the same time in the past Tony was reading a book and Andrew was listening to music.

Note!

The Past continuous and the Past simple are often used together. The Past simple interrupts the action of the Past continuous.

I was having breakfast when the postman arrived.

1 Look at James's diary and the things he did yesterday. Then write eight sentences about what James was doing at the following times.



- 1 7.10 a.m. He was having breakfast.
- 2 7.45 a.m.
- 3 10.15 a.m.
- 4 1.25 p.m. _____
- 5 2.00 p.m.
- 6 6.00 p.m. _____
- 7 7.15 p.m. _____
- 8 9.30 p.m.

2	W	rite short dialogues as in the example.				
	1	the boys / play football - no / play golf				
		A Were the boys playing football?	4	Tess / sing - no	/ listen to music	
		B No, they weren't.	1.00		?	
		A What were they doing?		_	-	
		B They were playing golf.			?	
	2	Mr Brown / teach - no / take a break				
	2		5		ork - no / visit a friend	
		A?	,			
				_	?	
		A?		-	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
		В			·	
	_					
	3	she / wait for the bus - no / wait for a taxi	6	they / have breakfast - no / sleep		
		A?			?	
		В		В		
		Α?		Α	?	
		В		В	<u>-</u>	
3	Co	mplete the sentences with the verbs in bracket	c in th	a Past continuo	us or Past simple	
•					N 2 7	
	1	While the guests (dance),	4		the knock,	
		thieves (break) into the			to the door and (open)	
		house and (steal) a lot of			it, but I (not recognise)	
		jewellery.			him at first because I (not	
	2			wear)	my glasses.	
		(start) suddenly and he (fall)	5	We (look)	over the wall	
		over.			Mr Jones. He	
	3	A How (you/damage) your		(plant)	tomatoes and (be)	
		car so badly?			too busy to speak to us.	
		B I (run) into a lamp-post	6		a letter when the wind	
		yesterday.			it out of my hand.	
		A I suppose you (drive) too		8		
		quickly or maybe you (not look)				
		where you (go)				
4	Co	mplete the sentences with the verbs in brackets	s in th	e correct form.		
	1	When I last (see) her she	4	A Why (you /u	ise)a walking	
		(hurry) to the station.		stick?	- 27 P 2 C 2 C 2 C 2 C 2 C 2 C 2 C 2 C 2 C 2	
	2	While the scientist (make)		B I (fall)	off a horse and	
		his speech, he suddenly (faint)			my leg.	
			5		a treasure box while	
	3	Last night I (wake up) and	0.75		in my garden.	
	-	(think) someone (break)	6		you last week while I	
		into my house.	J		to work.	
		into my nouse.		(41170)	to Horn.	

5	Jo	in A to B using while or when.			
	A 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	She did her homework John broke his leg I had an accident We noticed you have many Albert cut himself I was wondering what to do next They were sitting in the garden Two men were fighting in the street	a b c d e f g h	B	I called for help. we were looking through your books. she was listening to her favourite music on the Internet. he was skiing in the Alps. he was shaving. it started to rain. I was going only 30 kph. the phone rang.
	1			5	
	2			6	
	3	<u> </u>		7	<u> </u>
	4			8	-
6	Us 1	e the words to make sentences using the Past John / have / accident / while / he / cross / road John had an accident while he was	coı		when / the music / stop / someone / put on / another song
		crossing the road			
	2	when / we / arrive / stadium / our friends / wait / for us		6	yesterday / children / stay / home / while /
				Ü	study for their exams
	3	phone / ring / while / I / have / bath			
	4	he / work / on his thesis / until / 1.00 a.m. / when / fall asleep		7	Mark and Lina / break / window / while / they / play / tennis
_	7220				
7		rite questions as in the example and answer	then		
	1	7.30 p.m. last Wednesday		4	4.00 p.m. two days ago
		A What were you doing at 7.30 p.m. last Wednesday?		_	A?
	_	B I was having dinner.		5	8.00 a.m. last Friday
	2	10.30 a.m. yesterday			A?
		A?		•	B
	3	B 3.00 a.m. this morning		6	9.30 p.m. yesterday
	3	<u>.</u>			A?
		A?			В
		В			

Present perfect simple

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
I have / I've walked.	I have not walked. / I haven't walked.
You have / You've walked.	You have not walked. / You haven't walked.
He has / He's walked.	He has not /walked. / He hasn't walked.
She has / She's walked.	She has not walked. / She hasn't walked.
It has / It's walked.	It has not walked. / It hasn't walked.
We have / We've walked.	We have not walked. / We haven't walked.
You have / You've walked.	You have not walked. / You haven't walked.
They have / They've walked.	They have not walked. / They haven't walked.

INTERROGATIVE	SHORT ANSWERS	NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE
Have I walked?	Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.	Haven't I walked?
Have you walked?	Yes, you have. / No, you haven't.	Haven't you walked?
Has he walked?	Yes, he has. / No, he hasn't.	Hasn't he walked?
Has she walked?	Yes, she has. / No, she hasn't.	Hasn't she walked?
Has it walked?	Yes, it has. / No, it hasn't.	Hasn't it walked?
Have we walked?	Yes, we have. / No, we haven't.	Haven't we walked?
Have you walked?	Yes, you have. / No, you haven't.	Haven't you walked?
Have they walked?	Yes, they have. No, they haven't.	Haven't they walked?

The **Present perfect simple** connects past actions and situations with the present. It is mainly used to talk about:

- past events with a present result
 I've broken my leg. (= My leg is broken now.)
- recent actions/events when the time is not specified (e.g. news)
 There has been an explosion at the train station.
- actions in the recent past (ever, before, never, yet, already)
 I've already spoken to my boss about my holiday.
- the indefinite past (we're interested in what happened, not when it happened)
 - A Have you ever seen 'Romeo and Juliet?'
 - B Yes, I've seen it.

But, if the time of action is mentioned, we must use the Past simple.

- A Have you seen 'Romeo and Juliet?'
- B Yes, I saw it on TV last week.
- · general experience

I've travelled all over the world.

- actions starting in the past and continuing to the present (usually with for and since)
 We've lived in this flat for three years.
- with expressions like it's the first / second / third time
 It's the second time I've written to them.

• it is also used with expressions of unfinished time (all my life, in the last few days/months/years, today etc.).

I've written six letters this morning (it's 11:30 a.m.).

Note!

to go has two past participles:

He has been to the store. (He went and he came back.)

He has gone to the store. (He went and he hasn't come back yet.)

Notice the word order with adverbs of frequency. *Ever* and *never* come **before** the past participle. *Harry has never seen London Bridge*.

Have you ever had a dog?

1	W:	rite sentences or questions using the words below Jane and Harry / decide / to buy a camper van	ow in 5	David / call / yet?	
		Jane and Harry have decided to buy a		,	
		camper van.		?	
	2	Vera / pass / her exams			
			6	Janet / start / her driving test	
	3	you / see / John / anywhere?			
		?	7	A Would you like a slice of pizza?	
	4	Nancy / go / on / a diet?		B No, thanks. I / just / eat / lunch.	
•	<u> </u>				
2	An	swer the questions using the words in brackets	i.		
	1	When did it last snow? (for ages)	5	When did you last see a good film? (since June)	
	8	It hasn't snowed for ages.		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	2	When did he last send you an email? (since the summer holidays)	6	When did you last go to Africa? (never)	
		the summer noneups,	7	When did they last come to visit us? (since	
	3	When did you last exercise? (for a week)		last spring)	
	4			When was the last time you went to the	
		months)		gym? (never)	
).			
3		ou are a journalist and you are interviewing an uld ask him/her using the words below.	explo	rer for an article. Write questions that you	
	1	(you ever / be / to the Amazon) Have you ever been to the Amazon?	4	(how many times / you / fly / in an aeroplane)	
	2	(you / do / any conservation work)	5	(you ever / ride / a camel)	
	1600	?		?	
	3	(vou / travel / all your life)	6	(vou ever / hold / a snake)	

	ewrite the verbs using the Present perfect, then nd negative-interrogative.	make	them negative, interrogative
1	John White is an explorer.	4	The electrician (have) an
	He (be) <u>has been</u> to the South Pole.	V-197	electric shock.
	He hasn't been to the South Pole.		
	Has he been to the South Pole?		
	Hasn't he been to the South Pole?		
2	Hannah and Paul (know)	5	Your brother (get fined)fo
	each other for a year.		speeding twice.
	?		
3	Maria (win) five tennis	6	She (travel) in Asia.
10.50	tournaments.		Sile (liuvei) iii /isia.
			·
	?		
	?		
5 R		1	
	ead the situation and write a suitable sentence usi	_	
1	The table leg was broken. Now it's mended	4	We had a flat in the mountains. We don't
	(repair)		have it any more. (sell)
_	I have repaired the table leg.	-	Ch. didakarah Fadiah Nasaharah
2	Your house was white. Now it's yellow.	5	
	(paint)	English well. (learn)	
3		6	I was hungry. Now I'm not. (eat)
	Washington. (move)		3
6 C	omplete the sentences with the verbs in brackets	in eithe	er the Present perfect or the Past simple forn
1	He (live) <u>has lived</u> in London for two	5	A When (he/call)?
	years and he (go) <u>went</u> to New		B He (phone) at 7.00 a.m
	York last year.	6	(you/lock) the door when
2	A (you/wear) your hair		you left the house?
	short when you were at school?	7	I can't leave the office because I (not finis
	B Yes, my mum (insist) on		my work yet.
	it.	8	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
3	Shakespeare (write) a lot of		before?
	plays.		B Yes, I (visit) my cousin
4	,		there last year.
	songs. He (just/finish) the		
	songs. He (just/finish) the third one.		

	1	They've never flown before.	6	It's the second time I have read this book.
		It's the first time they've flown.		
	2	It's the first time I've seen this movie. I've never seen this movie before.	7	I've never driven a Jeep before.
	3	It's the second time I've told you to be quiet. I've told you to be quiet twice.	8	It's the first time he's met her.
	4	We've never been to London before.	9	It's the third time I've called you.
	5	It's the first time I've eaten oysters.	10	She's never given them problems before.
8	Co	mplete the centences with either been or gon	•	
0		mplete the sentences with either been or gone A Where are the children?		Table to book books a second late
	1		4	lan is back home now. He's to France on business.
	2	B They've to school.		
	2	A Are you going shopping?	5	I've to that restaurant before and I loved it.
		B No. I've already to the	6	
	2	shops.		Tom has to the gym for a few hours.
	3	My mum's not home now. She's to pick up my sister.		iew nours.
		to pick up my sister.		
9		ou work for a TV channel and are preparing the d write the headlines in full. Include any othe		
9		ou work for a TV channel and are preparing th		
9	an	ou work for a TV channel and are preparing the d write the headlines in full. Include any othe		
9	an 1	ou work for a TV channel and are preparing the d write the headlines in full. Include any othe British man / win / singles title / Wimbledon		
9	an 1 2	ou work for a TV channel and are preparing the d write the headlines in full. Include any other British man / win / singles title / Wimbledon young girl / disappear / North Wales Queen / welcome / official delegation /		
9	an 1 2 3	work for a TV channel and are preparing the dwrite the headlines in full. Include any other British man / win / singles title / Wimbledon young girl / disappear / North Wales Queen / welcome / official delegation / United States post office workers / vote to go on strike /		

Present perfect continuous; Present perfect tenses with *for* and *since*

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	INTERROGATIVE
I have (I've) been sleeping. You have (You've) been sleeping. He has (He's) been sleeping. She has (She's) been sleeping. It has (It's) been sleeping. We have (We've) been sleeping.	I have not (haven't) been sleeping. You have not (haven't) been sleeping. He has not (hasn't) been sleeping. She has not (hasn't) been sleeping. It has not (hasn't) been sleeping. We have not (haven't) been sleeping.	Have I been sleeping? Have you been sleeping? Has he been sleeping? Has she been sleeping? Has it been sleeping? Have we been sleeping?
You have (You've) been sleeping. They have (They've) been sleeping. SHORT ANSWERS	You have not (haven't) been sleeping. They have not (haven't) been sleeping. NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE	Have you been sleeping? Have they been sleeping?
Yes, I have. / No, I haven't. Yes, you have. / No, you haven't. Yes, he has. / No, he hasn't. Yes, she has. / No, she hasn't.	Haven't I been sleeping? Haven't you been sleeping? Hasn't he been sleeping? Hasn't she been sleeping?	

The **Present perfect continuous** is formed with *has / have + been + -ing* form of the main verb. It is used:

- to express a continuous activity that began in the past and will probably continue into the future He has been working for our firm for many years.
- to express an action that began in the past and has just recently stopped *He has been talking on the phone*. (Now he's writing a letter.)

For and since

for + period of time (three days, an hour, more than two years, ages, many weeks...).

since + specific moment in time (Christmas, last Thursday, March, I was young, 1978...).

Present perfect simple vs present perfect continuous

Both the Present perfect tenses can be used to talk about recent actions and situations that continue into the present. However, there are important differences:

- The Present perfect continuous focuses on the action/situation itself, drawing attention to its
 continuous/extended nature; the Present perfect simple emphasises the finishing of an action/
 situation and its result.
 - I've read your book. (Focus = the fact that I have finished reading the book.)
 I've been reading your book. (Focus = the activity of reading your book, which I haven't finished yet.)
- The Present perfect continuous is used to say how long; the Present perfect simple is used to say how much, how often, how many.

They've been sleeping for ten hours. / I've studied two chapters.

 The Present perfect continuous is used for temporary situations; the Present perfect simple is used for permanent situations.

She's been staying with relatives for a month. / I've lived in Milan all my life. (Note! We do not use **for** or **since** with **all**.)

Sometimes there is very little difference between the two forms. When both are possible, it is preferable to use the Present perfect continuous.

There are certain verbs that can never be used in any continuous tense. These are verbs relating to:

- sense (to smell, to taste, to hear, to see...)
- liking or disliking (to hate, to love, to like...)
- thinking (to believe, to forget, to imagine, to know)
- possession (to have, to belong, to own, to possess...)
- being (to be, to exist...)

Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets in the Present perfect continuous tense. Then,
change the sentences to negative, interrogative and negative-interrogative.

1	He (play) <u>has been</u> He hasn't been playi	n playing all afternoon. ng all afternoon.	4	Tony (dig) time.	for a long
	Has he been playing	all afternoon?		-	
	Hasn't he been playi	ng all afternoon?		3	?
2	It (rain)	for two days.			?
			5	I (drive)	for two hours.
	7				 ?
3	You (eat)	a lot of junk		·	?
	food lately.		6	Julia and Michae	el (prepare) for the party for a long
	u-	?		time.	
	S	*		0 <u></u>	?
					?

- 2 Read the situations below. Write explanations for the situations using the words in brackets and the Present perfect continuous.
 - Miranda is crying. (she / peel / onions)
 The roads are blocked. (it / snow / for three days)
 Your skin is very brown. (you / sunbathing / too much)
 (someone / use / my bike). The chain has
- You seem quite irritated lately. (you / not sleep / enough)
- 6 He is really thirsty. (He / speak / for an hour now)
- 7 Our flat is old. (we / live / here since 2000)
- 8 (you / drive / all day) Let me drive now.

fallen off.

3	Co	mplete the sentences using for or sin	ce.		
	1	We've been working fours.	three	5	He has been a member of the rowing club a year.
	2	I've been working in this office		6	We've known them a long
		a month.			time.
	3	They've been away at university		7	He has been very ill Easter.
		September.		8	
	4	I've been living there	2008.		yesterday.
4		rite questions to match the answers.	Use either	the Pr	esent perfect simple or Present perfect
	1	How many cakes has he eaten?		6	?
	2	He's eaten two cupcakes.		7	He's been learning Chinese since last year.
		They've been collecting rare paintings for			I've been jogging a lot.
		several years.		8	?
	3		?		He's had a beard for two months now.
		It's been raining all day long.		9	?
	4	-	?		Tom has been driving for five years.
		Yes, I've been waiting ages.		10	?
	5		?		Yes, my dad has always worked at the
	5	We've known each other since we w			Yes, my dad has always worked at the airport.
	5	We've known each other since we we young.			
5	Con	young. mplete the sentences and questions to the sentences are sentences and questions to the sentences are sentences and questions are sentences are sentences are sentences are sentences and questions are sentences are se	ere using the v		airport. a brackets. Choose either the Present She (read) all the works
5	Cor per 1	mplete the sentences and questions unfect simple or Present perfect continuous I (lost) my key. Can you me find it?	using the voluous.		airport. n brackets. Choose either the Present
5	Cor per 1	young. mplete the sentences and questions to the sentences are sentences and questions to the sentences are sentences and questions are sentences are sentences are sentences are sentences and questions are sentences are se	using the voluous.		she (read) all the works by J.K. Rowling. How many (you/read)?
5	Cor per 1	mplete the sentences and questions of the sentences and questi	using the valuous.	7	airport. h brackets. Choose either the Present She (read) all the works by J.K. Rowling. How many (you/read)
5	Conper 1	young. mplete the sentences and questions to rect simple or Present perfect continuous of the continu	using the valuous.	7	she (read) all the works by J.K. Rowling. How many (you/read)? You can wake her. She (sleep) for ten hours now.
5	Conper 1	mplete the sentences and questions to refect simple or Present perfect continuous of the sentences and questions to refect simple or Present perfect continuous of the sentences	using the voluous. u help my	7	airport. brackets. Choose either the Present She (read) all the works by J.K. Rowling. How many (you/read) ? You can wake her. She (sleep) for ten hours now.
5	Corper 1 2 3	mplete the sentences and questions to rect simple or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and questions to rect simple or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and questions to rectangle or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and questions to rectangle or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and questions to rectangle or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and questions to rectangle or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and questions to rectangle or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and questions to rectangle or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and questions to rectangle or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and questions to rectangle or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and questions to rectangle or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and questions to rectangle or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and questions to rectangle or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and perfect continuity of the sentences and perfect continuity of the sentences and questions are sentences are sentences and questions are sentences and questions are sentences and questions are sentences are sentences and questions are sentences	using the voluous. u help my n email	7	she (read) all the works by J.K. Rowling. How many (you/read)? You can wake her. She (sleep) for ten hours now. That painting (hang) on that
5	Corper 1 2 3	mplete the sentences and questions to fect simple or Present perfect continuation of the sentences and questions to fect simple or Present perfect continuation of the sentence of the sentenc	using the voluous. u help my n email	7 8 9	she (read) all the works by J.K. Rowling. How many (you/read)? You can wake her. She (sleep) for ten hours now. That painting (hang) on that wall for as long as I can remember.
5	Corper 1 2 3 4	mplete the sentences and questions to refect simple or Present perfect continuous of the sentences and questions to refect simple or Present perfect continuous of the sentence of the sentenc	using the voluous. u help my n email	7 8 9 10	she (read) all the works by J.K. Rowling. How many (you/read)? You can wake her. She (sleep) for ten hours now. That painting (hang) on that wall for as long as I can remember. The boy (not wash) his hands
5	Corper 1 2 3 4	mplete the sentences and questions to refect simple or Present perfect continuous of the sentences and questions to refect simple or Present perfect continuous of the sentences	using the valuous. u help my n email t. get	7 8 9 10	she (read) all the works by J.K. Rowling. How many (you/read)? You can wake her. She (sleep) for ten hours now. That painting (hang) on that wall for as long as I can remember. The boy (not wash) his hands before eating.
5	Corper 1 2 3 4 5	mplete the sentences and questions to rect simple or Present perfect continuity of the sentences and questions to rect simple or Present perfect continuity of the sentence of	using the valuous. u help my n email t. get	7 8 9 10	she (read) all the works by J.K. Rowling. How many (you/read)? You can wake her. She (sleep) for ten hours now. That painting (hang) on that wall for as long as I can remember. The boy (not wash) his hands before eating. They (build) that house

Present perfect simple or Past simple

The Present perfect simple looks back from the present to the past.

The Past simple focuses on actions in the past.

We use the Present perfect to ask or say how long something has been happening up to the moment of speaking; use the Past simple to ask or say when something happened.

They've known each other for two years.

They saw each other at the cinema yesterday.

The Present perfect always tells us something about the present; the Past simple tells us only about the past but we don't know if the situation is still true at the moment of speaking.

I've broken my arm. (My arm is broken at the moment of speaking.)

I broke my arm.

Use the Present perfect with indefinite times (lately, recently, never, ever...) or with this morning, this year, today etc. when these times are not finished.

I've never been to London.

Have you seen Tony this morning? [It's still morning.]

Use the Past simple with finished times (yesterday, last year, two months ago...).

I went to the doctor's yesterday.

Use the Present perfect to give new information or to announce a recent happening but then use the Past simple to continue the story.

A I've cut my finger!

B How did you do it?

Note!

It's three days since they called. [affirmative, Past simple] = They haven't called for three days. [negative, Present perfect]

It's a week since we spoke. [affirmative, Past simple] = We haven't spoken for a week. [negative, Present perfect]

1	Complete	the sentences	with	for.	since or	aao.
	Compicie	the ochiecheco	****	, .,	OHICC OI	

1	He hasn't eaten anything	6	He became ill three days
	two hours.	7	This jumper is old. I've had it
2	Tom's mum has been a teacher		ages.
	2002.	8	I've been on holiday
3	Robert grew his beard a year		a week now.
	·	9	They've been trying to open the door
4	Have you been learning French		half an hour.
	a long time?	10	Tony has been living in America
5	The weather has been quite nice		2010.
	Easter.		

2	1	order the words below to make sentences or of I / John / I / since / known / have / a / boy / was	•	had / she / an argument / her / has / with /
	2	project / we / worked / have / since / a / on		best friend
		/ last / very / month / interesting	6	didn't / why / to / the / go / doctor's / you/?
	3	heard / you / news / the / have?	7	haven't / I / a / doctor / seen / I / retired / since
	4	had / she / problems / her / with / neighbours / has	8	have / what / done / the / day / all / children?
3	W	rite sentences, questions and answers with I	now long	+ Present perfect and when + Past simple.
	1	He works in a bank / July How long (work) has he been working in	4	We play on the beach / this morning How long (be)
		a bank? He's been working in a bank		?
		when (start) did he start working in		When (arrive)
		a bank? He started working in a bank in July.		?
	2	My sister skis very well / a child How long (ski)	5	They listen to music / an hour How long (listen)
		?		?
		When (begin)		When (start)
	3	I jog / 45 minutes How long (have)	6	You cook in the kitchen / the afternoon How long (cook)
		?		·
		When (start)		When (start)
		?		
		1		·
4	Re	write the sentences so that the second senter	nce has t	he same meaning as the first.
	1	It has been years since I last went skiing.	6	We haven't been to New York for years.
	_	I haven't been skiing for years.	-	It's six weeks since I last cleaned this room.
	2	I haven't eaten beef for a month. It's a month since I last ate beef.	7	It's six weeks since I last cleaned this room.
	3	They haven't been to a birthday party for four years.	8	My mum hasn't seen Louise for 20 years.
			9	They haven't been to the theatre for at least a year.
	4	I haven't seen this film for ages.		
	5	It's ten months since I last ate chocolate.	10	It's fifty years since our city held a large sporting event.

Past perfect, Past perfect or Past simple?

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	INTERROGATIVE	NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE
I had eaten.	I hadn't eaten.	Had I eaten?	Hadn't I eaten?
You had eaten.	You hadn't eaten.	Had you eaten?	Hadn't you eaten?
He had eaten.	He hadn't eaten.	Had he eaten?	Hadn't he eaten?
She had eaten.	She hadn't eaten.	Had she eaten?	Hadn't she eaten?
It had eaten.	It hadn't eaten.	Had it eaten?	Hadn't it eaten?
We had eaten.	We hadn't eaten.	Had we eaten?	Hadn't we eaten?
You had eaten.	You hadn't eaten.	Had you eaten?	Hadn't you eaten?
They had eaten.	They hadn't eaten.	Had they eaten?	Hadn't they eaten?

The **Past perfect** is formed with *had* + past participle of the verb. It is the same for all persons.

We use the Past perfect:

to express an action in the past, which happened before another action in the past. We use the Past
perfect for the earlier event and the Past simple for the more recent event.
 When I arrived, Fred had already left.

Note!

Look at the difference between these two sentences:

When I arrived, Fred left. (First I arrived and then Fred left.)

When I arrived, Fred had left. (Fred left before I arrived.)

- to talk about past events with the expressions It was the first/second... time...
 It was the second time she had been late for work.
- with the expressions already, yet, just, and even
 I arrived at the bank at 5.30 p.m. but it had already closed.

1	Complete the sentences with the Past perfect. Then, write the sentences in the negative,
	interrogative and negative interrogative form.

1	They (leave) <u>had left</u> before she arrived.	4	Cathy (have) lunch.	
	They hadn't left before she arrived.			
	Had they left before she arrived?		9	7
	Hadn't they left before she arrived?			?
2	He (go) home when I phoned.	5	The teacher (prepare) her lesson before arriving.	
	7		lesson before arriving.	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			_ ;
3	They (eat) at that restaurant			7
	before.	6	Lucy (stay) for the confere	nce.
	?		7	_;
	?			

2	Complete these sentences with the verbs in brackets in the Past perfect.									
	1	Tony and Sam arrived. They (5		so happy to see)		
	2	We arrived at guests (eat)	the party late.	The othe	r	6		I arrived hor	ne I saw a	100 Page 100
	3					7	The	ar was dirty.		ash)
	-	He (just / finish) lunch.			ē.		it for		u311)	
	4				8		wasn't thirsty		/ drink)	
		she couldn't co		ady / mal	ke)			a big		
3	Co	mplete the sente	ences using th	e verbs be	elow. Be care	eful 1	to choo	se the Past p	erfect or Pa	st simple.
		met	had opened	visited	had been	p	assed	had started	didn't l	near
	1	She was crying			-	4		Mrs Davidso		
	2	unkind to her. I started to fee		n I roalico	d	5		d asleep. I rear James		
	2	someone			u	6				to rain.
	3	Im					-	Mary		
4	Re	write the senter	nces as in the	example	s.					
	1	1 It was the first time I had eaten sushi.				5	It was	s the first time	she had t	old me that
		I had never ea					story.			
	2	We had gone t	o that restaura	ant twice	before.	6	lt was	the first time	l had haa	n to the beach.
	3	It was the third	time he had	invited m	e on a	ь	it was	s the first time	e i nad bee	n to the beach.
		date.	Time he had	mvited in	e on a	7	Kate l	had never see	n the mon	ument before.
	4	I had never tas	sted octopus b	efore.	84	8	Mary	had never ha	d a baby b	efore.
5		mplete the sent u know.								-
	1	()	4 p.m. a	Iready and	d Jack	5		my mother (
		(be)	starving be	cause he	(not		Harris	son Secondar		
	_	eat)	anything si	ince break	ctast.		4l f-			ere because
	2	I (just finish) _ correct it for m		y test. wi	II you	6	Whon	ood (be)	so	delicious.
	3	Yesterday mor	B ()			6		we (be)		hanging of the
	3	the house at 8	o'clock I (ha)	1						it before.
		late and while				7		en)		
		office, I (remer				-	that I	(forget)	m,un	y purse.
		tl		- H M	80	8	When	I (arrive)		at the station,
	4	In Japan, base		a				ain had alrea		
		popular sport	for many year	S.						

Future simple; Future with going to

AFFIRMATIVE	SHORT	FORM NEGATIVE			SHORT FORM		
I will come. You will come. He will come. She will come. It will come. We will come. You will come. They will come.	I'll come. You'll come. He'll come. She'll come. It'll come. We'll come. You'll come. They'll come.		I will not come. You will not come. He will not come. The will not come.		I will not come. You will not come. He will not come. She will not come. It will not come. We will not come.		I won't come. You won't come. He won't come. She won't come. It won't come. We won't come. You won't come. They won't come.
IINTERROGATIVE	Tilley ii e	SHORT ANSWER			IVE-INTERROGATIVE		
Will I come? Will you come? Will he come? Will she come? Will it come? Will we come? Will you come? Will they come?		Yes, I will. / No, I v Yes, you will. / No, I Yes, he will. / No, I Yes, she will. / No, it Yes, we will. / No, Yes, you will. / No, Yes, they will. / No	you won't. he won't. she won't. won't. we won't. you won't.	Won't he Won't sh Won't it Won't w Won't yo	ou come? e come? ne come? come?		

There are several ways of expressing the future in English. We can use:

- the Future simple, to make predictions, general statements, offers, and to describe decisions made at the moment of speaking.
- going to, to describe plans, intentions, decisions already made about the future, and for predictions based on evidence.
- the Present continuous, to express a planned future (see Unit 10).

The **Future simple** is formed with *will* + the infinitive of the verb without *to*. *I'll text you later*.

In **short answers** with the Future simple we repeat the personal pronoun and the auxiliary *will | won't*:

A Will he be here by tomorrow?

B Yes, he will. / No, he won't.

The Future simple is used:

- to express predictions about the future The party will be great.
- after verbs such as to think, to expect, to hope, to suppose, to doubt, to be certain...
 I doubt it will stop raining.
- to express a decision taken at the moment of speaking Listen, there's someone at the door. I'll get it!
- to express something in the future which is independent of the speaker's control
 It will be his birthday next week.
- in sentences that contain the if/when/unless + Present simple + Future structure.
 If you want, I'll come and pick you up at the station.

The future with going to is formed with the present tense of to b	e + going to + the infinitive of the verb
without to.	
He is going to call me tomorrow	

the is going to call me tomorrow.

To form short answers with going to we use the structure:

Yes, + subject + am/are/is

No, + subject + 'm not/aren't/isn't

A Are you going to eat with us?

B Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.

Going to is used:

- to express a future action, intention or plan We are going to move to Spain.
- when, at the moment of speaking, we can see or feel that something is certain to happen in the near future

Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain.

Note the difference:

I'm going to make pasta for lunch. = [Decision made in the morning, when I went food shopping.]

A group of friends call and unexpectedly decide to stay for lunch...

No problem! I'll make some pasta! = [Decision made at the moment of speaking.]

Co	omplete the sentences with will or won't.		
1	She buy anything from that shop anymore. It's too expensive.	5	I called the shop this morning but my shoes arrive before Thursday.
2	그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그	6	Why you come with us to the music festival?
3	How long do you think the movie last?	7	you visit the new ancient artefacts museum?
4	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	8	I be able to go out until I finish my school project.
2 W	rite short answers using the Future simple. Use t	he w	ords in brackets.
1	Will you come by car? (yes) Yes, I will.	4	Will he go abroad? (yes)
2		5	Will you call when you arrive? (yes)
3	Will she have enough money? (no)	6	Will you leave for Paris this afternoon? (no)
3 A	nswer the questions using the words in brackets.	es.	
3 A 1	r and the first that the term is the contract of the contract	4	What do you think he will do tomorrow? (expect / go kite surfing)
	Do you think she will email you? (not sure I email) I'm not sure she will email me.	100	[

4	W	rite sentences with I think I'll or I don't thin	k I'l	l U	se the prompts to help you.		
	1	A friend offers you a lift but you decide to walk. I think I'll walk.	4	4	You planned to go out for dinner but you suddenly get a headache.		
	2	You planned to go by bus. Now you decide to take the underground.		5	It's hot and you're thirsty. You decide to have something to drink.		
	3	You are late for an appointment. You decide to call a taxi.		6	Your friend is late. You decide not to wait for them any longer.		
5	Fil	l in the gaps with either if, when or unless.					
	1	I won't go to the wedding they		4	I won't go to the cinema there		
		send me an invitation.			is something good showing.		
	2	you are careful, nothing bad will happen to you.			We will hopefully catch the 7 o'clock train Martin arrives.		
	3	you don't do it now, you'll regret it later.		6	He's going to cut the grass it stops raining.		
6	137	rite questions about Emma's dream holiday. I	Thon	mat	sh them to the answers. Use going to		
٠	1	2011 A 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	a	_	On Friday morning at 7 o'clock.		
	2	where / gowhen / leave			, ,		
	3	who / go with	c		Visit the Tower of London and Big Ben.		
	4	4 how / travel			To London.		
	5	what / do	е		For a long weekend, until Monday afternoon.		
	6	how long / stay	f		My best friends William and Lizzy.		
7	35	• Put the verbs in brackets into the Present o	onti	nuoı	us (see pp. 28-29), the <i>going to</i> form or the		
		ture simple. Then listen and check.					
	1	I'm certain I (recognise) him.		7	We hope that she (have) a		
	2	I (see) her tomorrow after			good time tomorrow.		
		school.		8	What (you / do) when you		
	3	Tom (catch) the 5.30 a.m.			finish school?		
		train.		9	I'm sure you (like) them.		
	4	I (go) there again next year.		10	0 ,		
	5 6	I suppose we (find out) tonight. I (believe) it when I see it.			B Yes, I will. I (buy) a lot of vegetables.		
8	An	swer the questions using your imagination. V	Vrite	sho	rt answers and a reason why		
		Will you help me if I'm in trouble?	•		Is he going to come?		
		Professional Control C					
	2	Are you going to rest?		6	Will they eat outside?		
	3	Are Lavine and Cindy going to Vienna?		7	Will she come back?		
	4	Will they be back for dinner?		8	Are you going to stay in New York?		

Relative clauses

	DEFINING CLAUSE		NON-DEFINING CLAUSE		
	PEOPLE	THINGS/ANIMALS	PEOPLE	THINGS/ANIMALS	
SUBJECT	who / that	which / that	who	which	
OBJECT	who / whom / that	which / that	who / whom	which	
WITH PREPOSITIONS	Prep. + whom	Prep. + which	Prep. + whom	Prep. + which	
POSSESSIVE	whose	whose / of which	whose	whose / of which	

A clause is a part of a sentence. We use relative clauses to join two sentences or to give more information about something.

Defining relative clauses provide essential information to tell us which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker is referring to.

Subject

What's the name of the woman who/that just walked in? The dog which/that bit me belonged to Rita.

Object

The children who/that/whom you saw in the park are my cousins.

The radio that/which I bought last week is fantastic.

Note!

We can omit who/that/which when they are object pronouns:

The radio (that/which) I bought last week is fantastic.

With prepositions

This is the house in which I was born. (Formal)

This is the house (that) I was born in. (Informal)

Possession

Whose is used to indicate who something belongs to or relates to. It is more correctly used with people, but **whose** can also be used before nouns.

Those are the people whose car was stolen.

The car whose tyres were flat was towed away.

Non-defining relative clauses do not identify or classify; they simply tell us more about a person or thing that is already identified. This extra information is provided between commas.

Subject

My friend, who is from Spain, speaks good English.

My nails, which usually are strong, broke yesterday.

Object

Brian, who everyone thought was clever, failed his exam. (Informal)

Brian, whom everyone thought was clever, failed his exam. (Formal)

My hat, which has flowers on it, is funny.

· With prepositions

Harry, who I work with, is a great guy. (Informal)

Harry, with whom I work, is a great guy. (Formal)

This watch, which I paid a lot of money for, doesn't work very well. (Informal)

This watch, for which I paid a lot of money, doesn't work very well. (Formal)

Possession

My uncle, whose son is a doctor, works in a bank.

The car, the bumper of which/whose bumper had been dented, was taken to the garage.

The car with the dented bumper was taken to the garage. (More common)

We can sometimes use the following question words instead of relative pronouns and prepositions: when, where, why, how, what

There are times during which I feel lonely. \rightarrow There are times when I feel lonely.

The caravan in which we stayed was comfortable. \rightarrow The caravan where we stayed was comfortable.

The reason for which they fought was stupid. → The reason why they fought was stupid.

He told me the way in which to cook pasta. \rightarrow He told me how to cook pasta.

The thing that I appreciate in him is his loyalty. → What I appreciate in him is his loyalty.

Other common relative pronouns are:

Whichever (it doesn't matter which) You can give me whichever sweater you want.

Whenever (it doesn't matter when) Come whenever you want.

Whoever (it doesn't matter who) Don't open the door whoever it is.

However (it doesn't matter how) *However much he eats, he never seems to put on weight.*

Whatever (it doesn't matter what) You can wear whatever you want to the party.

Everything (that) / all (that) The dog does everything (that) I tell him.

- 1 Write defining relative clause sentences using who or which and the sentences in brackets.
 - 1 I looked up at the sky. (The sky was full of stars.)

I looked up at the sky which was full of stars.

- 2 That man in the post office is my neighbour. (He just walked in.)
- 3 Joan has straight hair. (She looks unattractive with curly hair.)
- 4 The bus I take to work was late this morning. (The bus is usually on time.)

- 5 We're building our house. (It will be finished next week.)
- 6 A woman opened the door. (She looked very old.)
- 7 They gave us their phone number. (We wrote their phone number in our address book.)
- 8 I often go for a ride in the countryside. (The countryside is 30 minutes from where I live.)

2	For	rm defining relative clauses. If it is possible	to omit t	he relative pronouns, write them in brackets.
	1	The lady, <u>who</u> was here yesterday, has gone to London.	4	The old man, lives next door, is nice.
	2	The magazine, you lent me, is	. 5	The meal,you are cooking,
		very interesting.		smells terrible.
	3	The chair, was broken, is now	, 6	The music, the radio is playing,
		repaired.		is not the Rolling Stones.
3	Co	mplete the sentences using a defining relati	ive clause	e and your own ending.
	1	I don't like people	5	Albert Einstein was the man
		who / that don't keep promises.		
	2	The film was about a family	6	My father works for a shop
	3	Where are the clothes	- 7	I'm writing a book
		Parameter and the same test	?	
	4	A dictionary is a book	8	What was the name of the team
4	1	Love,which is a wonderful feeling, comes to everyone at some time in his life. Her brother, has been to London, has just returned. My employer, I dislike, works in the next room. Swimming, is a good sport, makes people strong.	5 6 7	ecessary relative pronoun which or who. Budapest, is on the Danube, is a beautiful city. George, became president of the student union, was a popular student. Henry, we saw at the bus stop, wants to go out with me. Air, we breathe, is made up of many gases.
5	Co	mplete the sentences with whoever, howev	er, what	ever, whichever, whenever or wherever.
	1	You don't have to stay until the end of the	35	I'll watch DVD you choose.
		lecture. You can leave whenever you	6	I take my children with me
		want.		l go.
	2	Great! The cinema's empty. We can sit	7	I'll never be able to speak Chinese
		we like.		hard I try.
	3	I'll be grateful to is willing to	8	
		help.	9	
	4	I'll do I can to make you	10	
		comfortable.		the job.
				2470.001.001.001.001.001.001.001.001.001.0

Question words; Exclamations

Who (as a pronoun) is used in questions to refer to people, singular or plural:

- · as a subject
 - A Who said that?
 - B Sally did.
 - A Who came for dinner?
 - B Victoria and Jason.
- · as an object

Who did you see? (Informal) Whom did you ask? (Formal)

with prepositions

Who did you talk to? (Informal) To whom is she getting married? (Formal)

Note!

After a preposition, whom must be used.

Whose (as a pronoun or adjective)

Whose is the black jacket? (Pronoun)

Whose shoes are these? (Adjective)

What (as a subject or object pronoun)

What caused the accident? (Subject)

What do you want? (Object)

What does she look like? (as an adjective)

Which, as subject and object, is used for people, things and animals, when there is a limited choice.

Which is mine, the coffee or the tea? (Subject)

Which dress do you like the best? (Object)

Exclamations

how + adjective or adverb

How beautiful you look!

how + subject + verb

How you've grown!

what a / an + (adjective) + countable singular noun

What an interesting person!

What a night!

what + (adjective) + countable plural noun

What lovely flowers!

what + a lot of + noun

What a lot of food!

Note!

Exceptions:

What a mess! What a shame! What a pity! What a nuisance!

1	Cor	mplete the q	uestions with the correct question	on words,	who, what or which.
	1	What	is wrong with your watch?	7	of those girls is Katie?
	2	2000	is your sister's name?	8	gave you that necklace?
	3	20	is nicer, the beach or the	9	is your favourite, the green one
		mountains?			or the blue one?
	4		is the answer?	10	took this photograph?
	5	0	is the largest city in your	11	is the matter?
		country?		12	would like something to drink?
	6	\$ -	is your doctor?		
2	Cor	mplete the q	uestions with suitable question	words.	
	1		do you go to school with?	6	rucksack is this?
	2		came to the party last night?	7	trousers do you prefer?
	3	-	is that old man?	8	did the gardener speak to?
	4	ii.	would you like to eat?	9	of these puppies is the cutest?
	5		does your father do?	10	time is it?
3	1 2 3	What did he He said yes		6 7 8	That one is worse. I spilled the milk. George turned on the TV.
	4	That are in h		9	They saled up to help them
	5	That car is h	<u>115</u> .	10	They asked us to help them.
	5	She has bro	ken <u>a plate</u> .	10	They're <u>her</u> children.
4	1 2 3 4 5 6	Complete en listen and What a		7 8 9 10 11	lovely music I hear! terrible person! beautiful you look this evening! easy this exercise is! interesting book! name to give a child!

Conditionals

The **Present conditional** is formed with **would** ('d) + infinitive of the verb without **to**. **Would** is used for all persons.

Affirmative

I would like to use the computer for an hour.

Negative

He wouldn't go home.

Interrogative

Would they go on their own?

Negative-interrogative

Wouldn't you enjoy going to the cinema with Emma?

It is used:

- with the verb to like to express a desire She would like to have a dog.
- · to ask or offer in a polite way

Would you like some coffee?

Would you come with me, please?

in second conditional sentences

I would call if I had time.

If I were you, I would study harder.

. to express the past tense of will or going to

She said she would be here.

He said he would buy some bread. (He said that but didn't buy any bread.)

The **Present conditional continuous** is formed with **would** + **be** + verb in base form + **-ing**.

She told me they would be working in the garden.

It is used to talk about an imaginary situation that could be happening at this moment. It is used for actions that might take place.

Zero conditional: *if* + Present simple + Present simple

If we heat ice, it melts.

If I'm late for school, my teacher gets angry.

I feel ill if I eat too much junk food.

The **Zero conditional** is used to talk about general truths. We use it to express what always happens if or when a certain action takes place.

If it rains, you get wet.

If people don't eat, they get hungry.

The teacher fails students if they miss an exam.

First conditional: *if* + Present simple + Future simple

If she finishes early, she'll join us.

The **First conditional** is used when we think the action is possible.

If she marries him, she will be happy.

Second conditional: if + Past simple + Present conditional

If you studied, you would pass your test.

The **Second conditional** is used when we talk about a situation that is imaginary or unlikely.

If I had the money, I would go on holiday. (I don't think I'll have the money.)

If I had the courage, I would try bungee jumping. (I don't think I will have the courage.)

1	Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets in the Present conditional.								
	 My husband doesn't like living in the city. <u>He would like</u> (He / like) to move to the country. You told me (you never / get) a tattoo. I've just passed my driving test. Now (I / like) to buy a car. 	5	We never thought (John / get) that job (they / be) happy to lend us their laptop? (you / pass) me that magazine on the table, please?						
2	Write Zero conditional sentences using if and the words below.								
	1 bread / rise / you / bake / with yeast		you / mix / red and blue paint / get / purple						
	2 not water / plants / die	100	public transport / be efficient / people / stop / using their cars						
	3 I / go / to bed / early / be / tired	6	some animals / bite / get scared						
3	Complete the sentences with the verbs in brack conditional continuous. 1 Margaret said she would never visit (never visit) them again. 2 Hannah said she (be visiting) her aunt over the weekend. 3 My dad said he (take) my	5 6 7	Why didn't you tell you me you (be taking part) in the charity run? (you / help) Henry? If I were you, I (ask) for						
	mum out for a nice anniversary meal. 4 Kate promised she (come shopping with me.) 8	advice. I (not buy) the same trainers as Francesca.						
4	Using if, match the clauses in A with the claus	es in B. Be o	careful: if may be in A or B.						
	A 1 I come over 2 She'll never lose weight 3 I'll post the letter 4 We'll call you 5 My headache will go away 6 It stops raining	B a	we have the time. we can go out for a walk. she doesn't start exercising. the children stop screaming. will you drive me home? you give me stamps.						
	1 If I come over, will you drive me home? 2 3	4 5 6							

5	Co	implete the sentences with the correct form	of the	e verl	os in brackets.	
	1	If we (invite)invite him, he (come)		5	The table (break), if you	1
		'Il come .			(stand) on it.	nativ Vestia
	2	If you (want), we (go)		6	,,,,,,	(tell)
	752	to the party together.		1922	them my secret.	
	3	If you (look) in the cupboard,		7	, ,, ,	u (like)
		you (find) some dishes.		_	it?	,
	4	If you (lose) your luggage, you		8	What (you / do) if there	(not /
		(contact) the lost and found office.			be) anything on TV toni	gnt?
6	Us	sing if, match the clauses in A with the claus	ses in	B. Be	e careful: if may be in A or B.	
	Α	<i>5 /</i>	В		, ,	
	1	I spoke English fluently	а		there wasn't so much noise in the st	reets.
	2	I were you	b		we would order a pizza.	
	3	She were young	С		your bills wouldn't be so big.	
	4	They weren't leaving	d		I would go to the party.	
	5	He lent me his car	е		she'd learn to ice skate.	
	6	They would come to visit	f	1	I would go and live in England.	
	7	I would fall asleep	g		they had time.	
	8	I had a date	h		I would really appreciate it.	
	9	Sue would come to dinner	i		I would cut my hair.	
	10	You used the phone less	j		she didn't have to work late.	
	1	If I spoke English fluently, I would go		6		
		and live in England.		7		- 5
	2			8		
	3			9		
	4			10		
	5					
7	Co	emplete the sentences with the correct form	of the	e verl	os in brackets.	
	1	If I (know) knew their address, I		5	If you (inherit) a million	i
		(write) would write them a letter.			pounds, what (you / buy)	_?
	2	I (buy) some new clothes, if I		6	If the weather (be) sunr	ier, we
		(have) some money.			(go) to the beach.	
	3	If I (win) the lottery, I (give up))	7	It (be) great if we (go) on holiday together.	
	4	I (translate) it for you, if I		8	My brother (travel), if h	is
		(know)Spanish.			company (ask) him to.	

Question tags

Question tags are short questions that often come at the end of a statement. They can be used to check whether something is true or to invite agreement.

We form question tags with the **auxiliary or modal verb** + **subject pronoun**. The pronoun always refers to the subject of the sentence. The verb in a question tag is always an auxiliary, a modal or a form of **to be** and agrees with the verb in the sentence.

You can swim, can't you?

She's your teacher, isn't she?

If the main sentence has no auxiliary or if the main verb is in the Present simple or Past simple of **to have**, the question tag is **do**.

You like swimming, don't you?

Ben gave her a necklace, didn't he?

He has lunch at noon, doesn't he?

N.B He has a nice family, doesn't / hasn't he? (have in possessive sense)

Question tags are used after affirmative and negative sentences only. To check information or ask for agreement, we usually put negative tags after affirmative sentences and affirmative tags after negative sentences.

Positive statement = negative tag It's cold, isn't it?

Negative statement = positive tag It's not warm, is it?

With words of negative sense (**never**, **hardly**, **nobody** etc.) we use an affirmative question tag. *He could hardly speak*, *could he?*

When we want to express surprise, anger, interest etc., we can use an affirmative question tag in an affirmative sentence.

You think you're funny, do you?

can / can't / could you? and will / would you? are used to make an imperative sentence more polite. Help me set the table, could you?

Call me tonight, will you?

Note!

After a negative imperative we must use will you?

Don't cross the road, will you?

After let's we use shall we?

Let's go dancing, shall we?

We use **they** in question tags after **someone** / **somebody**, **everyone** / **everybody** and **no one** / **nobody**. No one came, did they?

We use it after nothing.

Nothing happened, did it?

There is used as a subject in question tags.

There wasn't any food left, was there?

Note!

When we reply to a question tag, the answer must refer to the sentence, not to the tag.

A You're late, aren't you?

B Yes, I am. (agreement) / No, I'm not. (disagreement)

A They didn't eat, did they?

B No, they didn't. (agreement) / Yes, they did. (disagreement)

1 Complete the questions with the correct question tag. Then listen and check				ag. Then listen and check.
	1	He can read English,?	7	No one believes him,?
	2	She has a sister,?	8	They could swim well,?
	3	I must do it now,?	9	There were many people,?
	4	You have never given a speech,?		Turn the light off,?
	5	John likes coffee,?	11	
	6	He didn't live here,?	12	Nothing's going well,?
2		mplete the questions. Use the verbs in brackets		p you decide which tense to use and
	wh	nether to write in the affirmative or the negative		
	1	They (like) it, will they?	5	We (come) a long way, haven't we?
		They won't like it, will they?		See \$2000 \$1000 \$5000
	2	She (be) fond of her new puppy, isn't she?	6	You (be) very well that day, were you?
	3	You (must) be late home tonight, must you?	7	John (can) swim as a boy, could he?
	4	You (know) my mum, did you?	8	The children (have) a great time, didn't they?
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	He has been studying English a long time, hasn't he? Matthew is a good student,? She plays the piano very well,? She can play the piano well,? They go for a walk in the park every Sunday,? The bus stops at this corner,? The traffic is heavy today,? It takes more than an hour to get there, ? I gave you what you wanted,? You played tennis yesterday,?	11 12 13 14 15 16	Nothing else can be done about it,? Doctors should always warn people about the side effects of medicines,? You won't forget to buy the newspaper,? The new waiter never brings the breadbasket if you don't ask him to,? Try to be quiet you two,? Let's have some more ice cream,?
4	Ag	ree or disagree with the speaker, as indicated.		
	1	You have never loved me, have you? (Agree) No, I haven't.	4	They didn't like flying, did they? (Agree)
	2	He was an extremely rich man, wasn't he?	5	You won't be inviting them again, will you?
		(Agree)		(Agree)
	3	You would do anything for a new bike,	6	You don't eat enough, do you? (Disagree)
	1155	wouldn't you? (Disagree)	•	
			7	They won't tell anyone, will they? (Agree)
			•	,,,,,,

Verbs of sensory perception

To hear, to see, to watch, to notice, to listen to, to look at, to imagine, to perceive, to observe can be followed by:

object + infinitive (without to)
 I saw him open the door.

We use this form:

- to indicate that we perceive/perceived the entire action or event
 I watched him enter the building.
 I saw the car hit the old lady.
- to refer to actions or events that we habitually perceive/perceived
 I see him arrive every morning.
 I love to watch the sun rise.
- when we perceive a series of events
 I noticed him pick up the note, read it and put it in his pocket.

The verbs of sensory perception can also be followed by:

object + -ing form

We use this form to emphasise the action/event, and the fact that we perceived as it was happening. I watched them pulling the man out of the car. (but I do not know/say whether they finished/ succeeded in pulling him out. I simply say that I saw the action.)

object + past participle

This (passive) form is also used to emphasise the fact that we perceived an action/event as it was happening.

I watched the man being pulled out the car.

When the verbs of perception are used in the passive (e.g. He was seen, They were observed...) they are followed by:

- the infinitive when the action was seen or heard entirely
 He was seen to leave the building. (We actually saw him as he walked away)
- the -ing form when the action or event was perceived as it was taking place, or when we want to
 emphasise the action rather than the fact that it was completed
 He was seen putting the money into his pocket.
 He was noticed talking to some of the children.

1 Complete the sentences with either look, see, listen, hear or watch in the correct form.

1	He couldn'tse	e .	the eclipse because
	the light was too b	right.	
2	The judge is		to the defendant.
3	l was	to my	new CD when you
	called.		
4	Cats can	in	the dark.
5	My daughter never	f	to my
	advice.		
6	Quiet! I want to		what the
	teacher is saying.		
7	The doctor		to my heart
	yesterday.		
8	When we	y	ou we'd like to
	at you	ur holi	day photos.
			하는 하게 판매를 통하다고 하는 이 교통이 있었다.

9	I can't come. I promised my teacher I would
	that documentary on TV.
10	at the sea! It's beautiful.



2	Con	nplete these sentences with the correct form o	of the ve	erbs in brackets.
		She was seen (come) <u>coming</u> into the room.	6	She was watching her son (practise) the guitar.
	2	He was heard (sing) a beautiful song.	7	I heard the sound of glass (break)
	3	They were seen (get) into a car. I could hear someone (talk) on	8	We could smell something delicious (cook) in the kitchen.
		the phone in the other office. Have you ever seen Daisy (play)	9	We listened to the music (come) from the disco.
		tennis? She's fantastic.	10	I saw a column of flames (shoot) out of the window.
3		nplete each sentence with an appropriate ver	b of per	ception and the correct form of the verb in
		Has the teacher ever <u>heard</u> Jack (speak) <u>speak</u> English? He's fluent,		Didn't you him (leave) the building?
		isn't he? A I can something (burn)	5	Everybody him (go) to the door and (leave)
		B Is your stove on? A young couple have just moved into the	6	In autumn, I love to sit in my garden and leaves (fall)
		flat next door. I them (party) last night.	7	We could the rain (fall) outside.
4	tens	ok at these notes written by a detective who is se. For each sentence use I saw I watched I -ing form.		가 프랑스 병에 가장 2012년 1월 12일 전에 가려지 않고 있었다면 하셨다. 그리프로 이번 이번 이번 이번 이번 그리고 있는 것이다면 하나 하나 이번 때문에 되는 것이다.
	1	Left flat: 6.30 a.m. I saw him leaving the flat at 6.30 a.m.	5	8.30 a.m.: left room with suitcase
		Got into car, drove off.	6	The man argued with another man.
		Drove 5 km, stopped at hotel.	7	First man took package out of suitcase and handed it to second man.
	4	Went into room 208, closed door.	8	They shook hands.
5	Rev	write the sentences as in the example.		
3		We saw a car being stolen.	4	Have you ever seen someone making bread?
	2	I'd like to observe bees making honey.	5	I love watching people cut the grass.
	3	I watched the birds build a nest.	6	I like hearing people sing that song.

The -ing form (gerund) after prepositions and certain expressions

The -ing f	orm (C	Gerund)	of the	verb i	s usual	ly used:
------------	--------	---------	--------	--------	---------	----------

- after prepositions (by, on, without, after, before...) After finishing their work, the children went out to play. What about going out for an ice cream? She left without saying goodbye.
- after some expressions which include a preposition (to look forward to,

to be good at, to be tired of, dream of.....)

I'm tired of staying here. Let's go somewhere else.

There's no way of solving this problem.

I look forward to hearing from you.

• after some verbs and expressions (to like | to enjoy | to hate | to love | I can't stand | don't mind | I can't help | start | stop | suggest...)

I love going to the cinema.

I don't mind doing the washing up, but I hate tidying my room.

- Write the verbs in the -ing form.
 - 1 I can't help (feel) feeling anxious about the political situation.
 - 2 She likes (start) ______ books but hates (finish) them.
 - 3 My grandparents like (watch) us (enjoy) _____ ourselves.
 - 4 She loves (swim) ______.
 - 5 Don't just stand and watch the milk (boil) over! Do something!
 - 6 Most people prefer (ride) ______ a bike to (walk) .

- 7 I don't like (wear) this suit.
- 8 They are looking forward to (visit) their aunt and uncle next summer.
- 9 He insisted on (buy) me flowers.
- 10 I'm used to (get) _____ up early on Sundays.
- 11 He feels like (go) _____ for a walk.
- 12 She's good at (play) _____ the guitar.
- **2** Put the words in the correct order to make sentences or questions.

 - doing / at / weekends / homework / hate / I
 - 2 playing / this / What about / tennis / weekend / ?
 - 3 I / holiday / am / looking forward / going / to / on
 - 4 watching / film / After / the / home / went / Chris
 - 5 you / using / good at / computers / Are /?

6 Chinese food / eating / I / don't mind



out of the room.

(without)

3	Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets, as in the example.						
	1	She brushed her teeth and then went to bed.	7	He had dinner and then went out. (after)			
		(after) After brushing her teeth, she went to bed.	8	Michael Williamson is handsome and he's also rich.			
	2	I left the office, but first I checked that I had		(besides)			
		turned the lights off. (before)	9	Let's listen to some music. I don't want to study any more.			
	3	We can book a hotel if you don't want to		(instead of)			
		stay at a Bed & Breakfast. (instead of)	10	You can't organise this trip and not contact a travel agent.			
	4	My teacher is strict and she is also impatient.		(without			
		(besides)	11	I went shopping but first I got some money			
	5	First we studied the grammar rule and then		from the bank.			
		we did the exercise.		(after)			
		(after)	12	We visited the West Coast and then flew			
	6	He didn't say a word and then he walked		over the Grand Canyon			



(before)

4 Use the words in the box in the correct form to complete the sentences and questions.

	shout do wait pla	y smoke go think say
1	I can't stand people outside the front door of buildings.	5 What does he think he's going to achieve like that?
2	Don't leave without good bye to your sister.	6 I really hate for the bus in th cold weather.
3	Are you looking forward to anything on your day off?	7 Aren't you tired of that game 8 We were tired after to the
4	I can't help we have forgotten something.	theatre.

Gerund (-ing form) / Infinitive

Gerund (-ing form)

When we put a verb after a preposition, we normally use an -ing form, not an infinitive.

Always brush your teeth after eating.

They're talking about moving to Spain.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Some examples of to as a preposition are: to look forward to, to object to, to be used to, to prefer to, to get around to, in addition to...

Common verbs that are normally followed by the -ing form are:

to admit, to appreciate, to avoid, to burst out, to consider, to contemplate, to delay, to deny, to detest, to dislike, to endure, to enjoy, to escape, to excuse, to face, to fancy, to feel like, to finish, to forgive, to give up, (can't) help, to imagine, to involve, to keep (on), to leave off, to mention, to mind, to miss, to postpone, to practise, to put off, to resent, to resist, to risk, (can't) stand | bear, to suggest, to understand...

When the action of the -ing clause is done by another we can use:

possessive adjective / -'s + -ing form (formal)

I can't bear his / John's joking.

object / noun + -ing form (informal)

I can't bear him / John joking.

Verb + Infinitive

Common verbs normally followed by the **infinitive** include:

to afford, to agree, to appear, to ask, to attempt, to decide, to expect, to help, to hope, to manage, to mean, to offer, to prepare, to promise, to refuse, to seem, to threaten, to want, to wish...

I promise to call you.

Some verbs can take both the **infinitive** and **-ing** form:

to begin, to start, to continue, to attempt, to bother, to try, to fear... can be followed by either form with no significant difference in meaning.

I have started studying. = I have started to study.

Note!

If they are in a continuous tense, they are followed by the infinitive.

I am beginning to worry.

to begin, to start and to continue are followed by the infinitive of to understand, to know and to realise.

I started to understand what he was saying.

I began to realise that I didn't love him any more.

to be sorry for / to regret

• + -ing form for an action in the past

I'm sorry for breaking that vase.

+ infinitive for an action that still has to take place
 I regret to inform you that you can't go on holiday.

to hate, to like, to dislike, to love, to prefer

+ -ing form for habitual habits

I always wear skirts. I hate wearing trousers.

· + infinitive: with the conditional

We would love to see your wedding photos.

to mean

- + -ing form = to involve / to imply
 Having a family doesn't mean leaving your job.
- + infinitive = to want / to intend

 I meant to call you but I've been very busy.

to remember / to forget

- + -ing form for an action in the past
 I remember leaving my keys in the car.
- + infinitive for an action in the future I promise I'll never forget to lock the door.

to stop

- + -ing form = to stop doing something She stopped eating meat last year.
- + infinitive = to stop something to do something else We stopped to buy some meat.

to need

- + -ing form is used when the subject of the need clause is the object of the -ing clause This house needs cleaning.
- + infinitive is used when the subject of the need clause is also the subject of the infinitive clause I need to borrow some money.
- 1 Complete the sentences with the gerund (-ing) form of the verbs in the box.

	forget drive make contact live	do	watch complain	buy eat
1	I dislike <u>driving</u> in the dark.	6	I won't miss his	1
2	I can't imagine without you!	7	Does his job involve	potential
3	Have you ever considered	9323	customers?	2702 020202 2
	volunteer work?	8	We'll finish	and then I think
4	Do you think she'll forgive me for		we'll take a nap.	
	her birthday?	9	We enjoy	_ football matches on
5	The mechanic suggested new		TV.	
	tyres.	10	Please avoid	noise.

2 Complete the sentences with the infinitive form of the verbs in the box.

	meet	buy (x2) _see talk slee	p be	pack pay fi	nish speak
1	I wantto see	his latest film.	6	I offered	him something to eat.
2	I can't afford	any new clothes	7	I pretended	asleep because I
	this month.			didn't want	to her after our
3	She promised	her homework		argument.	
	before going out.		8	I refuse	any extra money.
4	We asked	to the manager.	9	My mum helped	my suitcase.
5	They decided	in a different hotel.	10	We agreed	at the office.

3		mplete the following pairs of sentences, one winitive form.	ith the	gerund (-ing) form and the other with the
	1	a Forgive me. I never meant (hurt) you.	4	a I remember (see) your glasses on the table.
		b We could move flat but it would mean		b I forgot (tell) you Leanne
		(spend) more on rent.		called.
	2	a I'm sorry for (say) the things	5	a He needs (see) a
	_	I said.		psychiatrist.
		b I'm sorry (say) no one passed		b Your clothes need (wash)
		the exam.	6	a I asked the students (stop)
	3	a I prefer (go) to the beach		and think before answering.
	1075	than the mountains.		b Martin has stopped (swim)
		b I would prefer (leave) early		at the pool every Saturday
		in the morning.		morning.
		the		
4	Co	mplete the following sentences with the verbs	in brac	kets in the correct form.
	1	I must (ask) ask you	8	We are growing flowers (sell)
		(stop) to stop (interfere) interfering.		at the market.
	2	He decided (arrange) the	9	It's difficult (train) an old dog
		meeting at once.		(do) new tricks.
	3	I won't (force) you (do)	10	He loves (eat) chocolate while
		it if you don't want to.		watching TV.
	4	We have decided (allow) her	11	I intend (go) out this evening.
		(do) as she wants.	12	
	5	I was encouraged (start) (look)		morning.
		for a job immediately.	13	My teacher advised me (revise)
	6	I understand you want (visit)		for the exam every evening.
		the National History Museum.	14	She heard them say they wanted (buy)
	7	The police suspect him of (try)		the house.
		(sell) stolen goods.		
5	Co	mplete the following sentences with the verbs	in brac	kets in the correct form.
	1	Are you going (keep) to keep me (wait)	6	My teacher encourages us (work)
		waiting all day?		individually on the grammar
	2	(See) is (believe)		exercises.
	3	I saw him (help) her (cook)	7	I would love (go) out with you
		the dinner.		tonight!
	4	We were invited (go) to their	8	Don't forget (go) to the bank.
		house (watch) the tennis.	9	
	5	I'm sorry (see) you (work)		thoroughly.
		so late every night.	10	
				resolve the matter.

Reported speech

There are two ways of reporting what people said, their thoughts or beliefs:

direct speech

He said, 'I hate you!', and left the room.

reported (or indirect) speech

He said that he hated me, and left the room.

When the verb introducing the reported speech is in:

 the Present simple, the Present perfect or the Future, the tense in the reported statement doesn't change.

I like this cake. → Bob says he likes this cake. Bob has always said he likes this cake.

• the Past simple, Past perfect or conditional, the verb changes as follows:

DIRECT SPEECH REPORTED SPEECH Present simple: 'I play tennis'-Past simple: She said she played tennis. Present continuous: 'I am playing'-Past continuous: He said he was playing. Past perfect: They said they had been to France. Present perfect: 'We have been to France'-Past perfect: She said Tom had left on Friday Past simple: 'Tom left on Friday'-Future: 'I will call' -Present conditional: He told me he would call. Present continuous conditional: She said she would be arriving late. Future continuous: 'I will be arriving late'→ Infinitive: He told her not to play. Imperative: Don't play!-

Note!

When the reported statement is already in the Past continuous, Past perfect, Past perfect continuous, Present conditional or Perfect conditional, then the tense does not change.

 A change of place and time may mean it is necessary to change certain words, e.g: here → there, this → that, now → then, today → that day, yesterday → the day before, tomorrow → the following or the next day, next Tuesday → the following Tuesday, last Monday → the previous Monday, ago → before

I felt ill last Friday. → He said he'd felt ill the previous Friday.

A change of speaker may mean a change of pronoun.

Tony I love reading.

Mary Tony says that he loves reading. (Not: Tony says that I love reading.)

- With modal verbs: can, may, shall change to could, might, should
 Can I speak to the doctor? → She asked if he could speak to the doctor.
- Must does not change if it is used to indicate a logical deduction, prohibition or intention
 You must stop talking! → She said that I must stop talking.

Must changes to had to if it expresses obligation

You must leave immediately! → They said I had to leave immediately.

Must can also change to would have to

I must see him tomorrow. \rightarrow He said that he would have to see him tomorrow.

Note!

The Past simple and Past perfect after to wish do not change.

I wish I were rich. \rightarrow She told us she wished she were rich.

Questions

How old are you? \rightarrow I asked how old she was.

Have you finished? → She wondered if / whether he had finished.

- · Reporting short answers
 - A Do you like skiing?
 - B Yes, I do.
 - → I asked him if he liked skiing and he replied that he did.
 - A Will you be leaving the office at 5 o'clock?
 - B No.
 - → I wanted to know if he would be leaving the office at 5 o'clock and he replied that he wouldn't.

1	Rewrite the following st	atements in reported	speech. Use the	verbs in brackets	in the Past simple

1	Stay here! (order)	6	Walk more quickly. (urge)
2	He ordered me to stay here. Don't leave the windows open! (remind)	7	Never talk to strangers! (warn)
3	Don't say a word! (order)	8	Change your money in a bank. (suggest)
4	Please, sit down. (ask)	9	Don't answer me like that! (warn)
			Enjay your haliday! (tall)
5 Rev	Come in and have a seat. (invite) write the following sentences in direct speech.	10	Enjoy your holiday! (tell)
	*	5	
	write the following sentences in direct speech. He told her not to go.		The dentist warned me not to eat sweets
Rev 1	write the following sentences in direct speech. He told her not to go. Don't go! He wanted to know if anybody was coming	5	The dentist warned me not to eat sweets The teacher said that the work would be

- 3 Rewrite the following sentences in reported speech. Use the verbs in brackets in the Past simple.
 - 1 You can phone from my office. (Tony / tell)

 Tony told me that I could phone
 from his office.
 - We're waiting for the school bus (the children / say)
 - 3 I can't live on my basic salary. (Liddy / complain)
 - 4 They've made a terrible mistake. (I / tell)

- 5 It'll be a great party, Nancy. (Mary / promise)
- 6 I hate getting up on rainy days. (Ben / grumble)
- 7 You're going to fall. (my mum / warn)
- 8 I will phone the police if you steal my bag. (Lisa / threaten)
- 4 Report the sentences using the following verbs. Some sentences use more than one verb.

protest warn suggest tell accept offer give invite insist introduce

- 1 He said: 'Don't walk on the ice, it isn't safe.'

 He warned me not to walk on the ice
 because it wasn't safe.
- 2 'Kathy, I would like you to meet Mr Smith', she said.
- 3 'Tom, if you don't feel like driving, I can drive instead', said Lucy.
- 4 'Why don't we wait here until the rain stops?' said Mary.

- 5 'Bad boy!', said his mum.
- 6 'Can you come to dinner tomorrow evening?', he asked. 'Oh, I'd love to!'
- 7 JOHN: I'll pay.

MARY: Oh, no, you don't have to.

JOHN: I insist on paying.

8 'Here's some money, children. Go and buy some ice cream,' I said.



The **passive** is formed with the appropriate form of the auxiliary to be + past participle of the main verb.

They speak English here. (Active)

English is spoken here. (Passive)

They built this house in 1980. (Active)

This house was built in 1980. (Passive)

The passive is used:

when we want to talk about an action, but we are not interested in saying who did it
 The judge decided the punishment. (Active)
 The punishment was decided by the judge. (Passive)

 when we don't know or don't want to say who the agent is Someone has left the door unlocked. (Passive)

The door has been left unlocked. (Passive)

• in formal writing.

Those pyramids were built around AD 400. (Passive)

In a passive clause, we usually use a phrase beginning with by if we want to mention the agent.

Your children caused all the trouble. (Active)

The trouble was caused by your children. (Passive)

Note!

When the active sentence contains two objects (direct and indirect), the indirect object usually becomes the new subject of the passive sentence.

Mary gave her friend (= indirect object) a present (= direct object).

Her friend (= subject) was given a present.

With modal verbs, the passive is formed as follows:

They couldn't hear me. = I couldn't be heard.

to need, to require, to want can be followed by -ing form with a passive function.

Your socks need mending.

In sentences with to think, to consider, to believe, to say, to report, to know, to find there are two possible passive forms.

They say he is a genius. (Active)

It is said that he is a genius. (Passive)

He is said to be a genius. (Passive)

People think I have a great job. (Active)

It is thought that I have a great job. (Passive)

I am thought to have a great job. (Passive)

		Make the following sentences passive, using en listen and check.		
	1	They treated the children to some ice cream.	4	Someone will meet her at the station.
		The children were treated to some ice cream.	5	I'll have to test you again.
	2	They played the instruments beautifully.	6	Grandmother gave Sally a lot of pocket
	3	They did nothing until he came.		money.
2		write the following sentences in the passive for ents only where necessary.	m. Do	n't forget the preposition and mention the
	1	Nobody can beat him at golf. He's never been beaten at golf.	4	You must iron this shirt for tonight.
	2	You must read carefully everything that is written.	5	Don't let the others see you.
			6	The police are sure to ask you that
	3	His jokes amused me a lot.		question.
		·		
3		ange the following passive sentences to the act	ive for	m. Choose any appropriate subject when
	1	The plants have not been watered. No one has watered the plants.	4	The new book is said to be interesting.
	2	A new branch was opened by my company in Liverpool.	5	This house hasn't been lived in for years.
	3	The Nobel Prize will be received next week.	6	The report was not accepted by the committee.
4	Co	nvert these sentences from active to passive. M	ention	the agent when necessary.
	1			10Ta
		Someone asked me a very interesting question.	5	People play tennis all over the world.
		question. I was asked a very interesting question.	5 6	
	2	question. I was asked a very interesting question. We told them to hurry up.	3048	Somebody gave me flowers for my birthday.
		question. I was asked a very interesting question.	6 7	Somebody gave me flowers for my birthday. They expected the meeting to start at 10.00 a.m.
	2	question. I was asked a very interesting question. We told them to hurry up.	6	People play tennis all over the world. Somebody gave me flowers for my birthday. They expected the meeting to start at 10.00 a.m. You should return these books to the library.

5	Co	nvert these active sentences into two passive fo	rms, a	s shown.
	1	They say Shakespeare is the greatest English writer of all time.	4	Nobody thinks he's a very good doctor.
		Shakespeare is said to be the greatest		
		English writer of all time / It is said that	5	The post office says it delivers first class
	_	Shakespeare is the greatest		mail in 24 hours.
	2	People think pollution is one of the biggest problems of the modern era.		
		T	6	People fear that a bomb has been placed in
	3	The police say he is guilty.		the building.
	,	——————————————————————————————————————		
6		nvert the following sentences into the passive. I	Jse the	word/s in bold as the subject of the new
	1	The news channels gave that story a lot of coverage. That story was given a lot of coverage	4	Vandals did some serious damage to the school.
		by the news channels.	5	They stole two televisions in the burglary.
	2	They will give you a call as soon as possible.	,,,	
		-	6	The professor presented the student with a
	3	The nurse put a bandage on my leg.		diploma.
7	Un	nderline the correct form in each sentence.		
	1	They feed I were fed the lions twice a day.	6	A thief stole I was stolen my wallet but
	2	One child couldn't have made I couldn't have been made all this mess.		brought I was brought it back when I offered a reward.
	3	We use I is used this room after dinner to	7	A storm flooded I is flooded my basement.
		watch TV.	8	Someone bought I were bought these cakes
	4	We will not accept I are not accepted		in that shop.
		cheques.	9	The students must do I be done their work.
	5	This dam made I was made by beavers.	10	Somebody had stolen I had been stolen the painting.
	•			•
8	Co	nvert the following passive sentences into a list	of sch	
	1	Ball games are not allowed inside the building.	4	Casual clothes may not be worn.
		Pupils must not play ball games inside	_	T
	-	the building.	5	Long earrings are not tolerated.
	2	Running in the corridors is forbidden.	6	Homework may not be handed in late.
	3	Eating outside the canteen is not allowed.		

To be | There is | There are

1	Re	order the words to make sentences.			
	1	are / six / fruit bowl / bananas / there / the / in	4	it / time / is / what / ?	
	2	a printer / in / is / your office / there / ?	5	and / Amy / hungry / are / Katy	
	3	in / my town / are / two cinemas / there	6	best / your / Spanish / friend / is / ?	
a /	an				
2	Co	mplete the sentences with a or an where neces	ssary.		
	1	Last time I ate piece of chicken I had indigestion.	7	My mum works in office in the centre of the city.	
	2	travel agent can give you plane	8	He's got quite large collection of vintage cars.	
	11121	fares.	9		
	3	Samantha had incredible time at the concert last night.		with nose, mouth and two eyes.	
	4	If you're cold while camping, you can light fire.	10	They should catch taxi. It'll take them forever to walk.	
	5	He broke his arm in car	11		
		accident. It's still in cast.		very exciting holiday.	
	6	We're having few friends over for dinner tomorrow.	12	Daisy works as nurse at the hospital.	
Pr	esei	nt simple and adverbs of frequency			
3	Pu	t the words in order to make sentences using a	dverbs	of frequency.	
	1	AND THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF		pizza / in the week / rarely / eat / they	
	2	the housework / hardly ever / my brother / with / helps	5	generally / in the sea / we / in the summer swim	
	3	on a Tuesday / usually / piano / lessons / has / Linda	6	homework / never / on a Sunday evening / Marcus / his / does	

Adjectives of nationality

4 Find and circle ten adjectives of nationality in the wordsearch.

G	R	E	E	К	w	1	s	Q	J
Ε	х	Р	F	н	Q	R	w	Z	Α
R	w	0	R	E	U	Ī	1	w	P
М	В	L	E	х	В	s	s	E	Α
Α	Υ	ı	N	w	Υ	Н	s	L	N
N	М	S	С	Н	I	N	E	s	Ε
Q	w	Н	Н	G	н	К	D	Н	S
Z	E	N	G	L	L	s	Н	Р	Ε

must, have to, can, could, be able to, should, need, may, might

- 5 Rewrite the sentences using *mustn't*, *needn't* or *don't have to*, and the word in brackets at the end of each sentence.
 - It isn't necessary to bring your passport.
 (you)
 - 2 The law says that children under 18 can't drive. (you)
 - 3 Applicants may bring a sample of their work although it's not required. (you)
- 4 Passengers are not permitted to unfasten their seat belts during landing. (you)
- 5 Passengers are not allowed to smoke in the toilets. (you)
- 6 A raincoat isn't necessary. It's not going to rain. (you)

Prepositions of place

- 6 Complete the sentences with in, on or at.
 - 1 The train arrived _____ the station on time.
 - 2 Josh put his coat _____ the back of the chair.
 - 3 There's a bottle of water my bag.
- 4 Susi left her passport _____ the kitchen table!
- 5 A Where are the children?

B Th	ey're _	school. I	t's Monday.

6 Please put your donations _____ the box the table.

soi	me,	any, no			
7	Co	mplete the sentences with some, any or no.			
	1	I'd like peaches and apples,	4	Would you like	tea?
		please.	5	Is there	
	2		6	I've got	time. I'm in a rush.
	3	I had money so I couldn't top up		Let's speak tomo	orrow.
		my mobile phone card.			
Co	mp	aratives and superlatives of adjectives.			
8	Co	mplete the sentences with the correct comparati	ive or	superlative adjec	tive.
	1	A theatre ticket is usually	5	They are buildin	g a (big)
		(expensive) than a cinema ticket.			house is too small.
	2		6	My little sister th	inks that Justin Bieber is
	3	This book is (good) than			(handsome) guy in the
		the last one.		world!	
	4	Who is (young) person in			
		your family?			
Pr	eser	nt perfect simple or Past simple?			
9	Do	write the sentences so that the second sentence	hac th	ao samo moaning	as the first
•	12				
	1	He is married. He got married six months	4	I first met kita fi	ve months ago. (know)
		ago. (marry)	-	Uva baan daina t	thase avarsises for two
	,	He has been married for six months.	5	hours. (start)	these exercises for two
	2	She's been ironing for an hour. (start) She started ironing an hour ago.		nours. (start)	
	3		6	The haby has be	en crying for a long time.
	,	two years ago. (study)	U	(begin)	en crying for a folig time.
		two years ago. (study)		(DCBIII)	
		· .			
R	elati	ive clauses			
		Manual State			
10	Co	mplete the film description with relative pronou	ıns.		
	The	e film (1) was shown on TV last night	t was	a detective film. A	very rich old man living
	in	a nice house, (2) was on the outskirt	ts of to	own had been mu	rdered and the police
		re investigating. The man, (3) had le			
		1920s. He had travelled all around the world. Th			
		erviewing were the victim's niece, (5)			
		urder, an old butler (6) had devoted			
	nai	me was mentioned in his master's will, and the o	id ma	n's sister (8)	had always
		ted him because she was jealous of her brother. I			
		ybe they'll repeat the film sometime, (10)		isn't unusual, and	i I don t want to ruin the

Question words

11	Wr	rite questions for the answers using the ques	tion	word	ls who or what.				
	1	I heard a noise.		5	She's eating with John.				
		What did you hear?				?			
	2	I washed my hair.		6	I threw a ball.	7			
	3	I saw a film.		7	We ate ice cream.				
	4	I talked to the police.		8	We're looking for a place to stay.	?			
		?			-	?			
Qu	esti	ion tags							
12	Co	mplete the questions with the correct question	on ta	gs.					
	1	You've done that before, <u>haven't you?</u>		7	You're not going to bed yet,	?			
	2	He likes me better than you,?		8	They weren't all adults,	?			
	3	Mosquitos are a nuisance,?		9	She can't dance as well as her sister,				
	4	You'll remember me if we meet again,			?				
		?		10	It has hardly rained this year,				
	5	You didn't pay for it,?			?				
	6	She doesn't need to come again tomorrow,		11	Somebody should tell her,	?			
		?		12	They bought us a beautiful present,				
					?				
Ve	rbs	of sensory perception							
13	Ma	Match the sentence halves in A with the endings in B.							
	Α		В	7					
	1	Some boys were seen	а		copying during a test.				
	2	I watched my son's hair	Ь		cross the street.				
	3	We have never seen	С	1	riding their bikes on the grass.				
		I would never have imagined they'd be	d		being cooked.				
	5	I always watch my children	е		laughing?				
	6	They heard John	f		being cut.				
	7	Nobody saw the cat	g		run up the tree.				
	8	Can you hear them	h		you dance.				
	9	Janet noticed Tom	i		fall into the river.				
	10	I could smell the fish	j		scream.				

Audioscripts

TR 2

Unit 1 ex. 4

Juan Excuse me. Is this seat taken? Kathy No, go ahead and sit down.

Juan Thanks. My name's Juan, by the way. What's yours?

Kathy Oh hi! Nice to meet you. I'm Kathy.

Juan That's an unusual accent. Where are you from?

Kathy I'm from Bristol, in the UK. I'm here on holiday. And you?

Juan I'm from Portugal.

Kathy Who are you here with?

Juan Just some friends from university. We're doing some research for a project.

Kathy Whose are those sketches? They're really good.

Juan Thanks! They're mine. I'm drawing some pictures of the famous paintings here.

Kathy What do you study? Juan Art and design. Kathy That sounds cool.

Juan Well, enjoy your holiday Kathy.

Kathy OK, thank you. It was nice speaking to you. Bye!

TR 3

Unit 2 ex. 2

- 1 I always eat an apple after breakfast.
- 2 My brother bought an interesting book about elephants.
- 3 Maryanne saw a famous singer in town.
- 4 Italy is a sunny country.
- 5 Max had a fantastic birthday party.
- 6 I usually take a packed lunch to school.

TR 4

Unit 2 ex. 7

- 1 This is a photo of my family.
- 2 I don't like these mushrooms.
- 3 How did you find those gloves?
- 4 That is a big room.
- 5 I'm going to read these books on holiday.
- 6 Those jeans over there are really cheap.
- 7 This watch is expensive.
- 8 Are these seats taken?

TR 5

Unit 2 ex. 8

- 1 Where are these men from?
- 2 Is this book his?
- 3 Are you students at this university?
- 4 What shall I do with my shoes?
- 5 Do you like that pasta I made?

TR 6

Unit 3 ex. 2

- 1 The furniture in your house is beautiful.
- 2 Where is the sugar?
- 3 His glasses are on the table.
- 4 Where are the teachers?
- 5 Fruit and vegetables are healthy for you.
- 6 The parks in my city are beautiful.
- 7 The weather is nice today!
- 8 My brother and my sister-in-law live in Amsterdam.
- 9 The students are in the classroom.
- 10 Sharks eat smaller fish.

TR 7

Unit 5 ex. 6

- 1 My sister likes telling jokes, but she isn't as funny as me.
- Where is my jumper? I thought I put it in my wardrobe.
- 3 I've got my tennis racket but Tom can't find his.
- 4 How are you? Great, thanks.
- 5 Can you help me, please? I can't reach that book on the top shelf.
- 6 That's John over there, but who's that with him?
- 7 What do you want? We want you to come with us.
- 8 Is that Sarah's bicycle? No, it's not hers.
- 9 The Williams are going on holiday and taking their children with them.
- 10 I like Mark, but he doesn't like me.

TR 8

Unit 6 ex. 6

- 1 Frank has got a new tennis racket.
- 2 Tim has a shower before school every day.
- 3 She usually has her holiday in August.
- 4 Did you have a nice flight?
- 5 I often have a shower when I get home.
- 6 Mrs Broad wants to have a chat with you.

TR 9

Unit 7 ex. 6

- 1 He never gets up before half past nine.
- 2 I usually drink my tea with milk.
- 3 The children often argue with each other.
- 4 I sometimes travel by train.
- 5 She rarely knows what to say.
- 6 I seldom understand these exercises.
- 7 Do they ever go to the theatre?
- 8 We are always late.

Unit 8 ex. 2

- 1 Tulips are typical Dutch flowers.
- 2 He drives an Italian car.
- 3 Feta is a Greek cheese.
- 4 There are two Swiss in my class.
- 5 He drinks German beer.
- 6 The Spanish live in Spain.
- 7 The Americans speak English, too.
- 8 The French speak French.

TR 11

Unit 8 ex. 4

- 1 What time does school start? It starts at 8.05 a.m.
- 2 What time do you have breakfast? I have breakfast at 715 a m
- 3 What time do they leave home? They leave home at 8.00 a.m.
- 4 What time does the post office close? It closes at 1.45 p.m.
- 5 Does the train leave at 4.00 p.m? No, it doesn't. It leaves at 3.50 a.m.
- 6 Do the banks close at 1.30 p.m? No, they don't. They close at 5.00 p.m.

TR 12

Unit 8 ex. 8

- 1 The first of October, nineteen ninety-three
- 2 A quarter past five
- 3 Thursday, the 19th of July, two thousand and twelve
- 4 Twenty minutes to six
- 5 Half past ten
- 6 The 29th of November, nineteen fifty-three
- 7 Fourteen minutes past midnight
- 8 Tuesday, the thirty-first of January, two thousand

TR 13

Unit 9 ex. 1

- 1 I never send them to him.
- 2 I always give them to my boss on time.
- 3 Laura and Sylvia often take it out for a walk.
- 4 Give them to Lucy, please.
- 5 I often buy them for my grandmother.
- 6 He rarely shows them to his friends.

TR 14

Unit 10 ex. 6

- 1 Where are they going? They are taking the dog for a walk.
- 2 She isn't working, she is swimming in the river.
- 3 The fire is going out. Is someone bringing more wood?
- 4 Is it raining? Yes, it is raining very hard.
- 5 He never listens to what you say.
- 6 What do you usually have for breakfast?
- 7 Who is moving the furniture upstairs? It's Tom. He is painting his bedroom.
- 8 What are you reading? I am reading Lewis Hamilton's biography.
- 9 Do you understand what the teacher is explaining?
- 10 Tom never helps me. He works on his bike all the time.

TR 15

Unit 10 ex. 7

- 1 I know the answer.
- 2 It's a lovely day. The sun is shining and the birds are singing.
- 3 Someone is knocking at the door.
- 4 You can't see Jack now. He is sleeping.
- 5 I love meeting my friends.
- 6 They usually speak so quickly that we don't understand them.
- 7 I refuse to answer any questions about my job. I'm on holiday!
- 8 I can't hear what you are saying. The music is too loud.
- 9 She usually phones me on Saturday evenings.

TR 16

Unit 10 ex. 8

Interviewer Hello Richard. Thanks for accepting my invitation to this interview. What are you doing at the moment?

Richard I'm visiting some friends. I'm taking a short holiday.

Interviewer Do you always come to the UK on holiday?

Richard No! But I love it here. Liverpool is a

beautiful city.

Interviewer What are your plans for today?

Richard I'm jogging around the park with a friend in the morning and in the afternoon I'm signing autographs at a book signing.

Interviewer Where are you staying?

Richard In a nice hotel in the centre.

Interviewer One last question. Are you working on a

new film?

Richard Yes, at the moment I'm finishing a film

I started last month.

Interviewer Thank you very much Richard. I can't wait

to see your next film!

Unit 12 ex. 5

- 1 There has been an accident on the motorway.
- 2 The dog was sitting beside me on the couch.
- 3 I saw your husband come out of his office.
- 4 Lidia threw a ball at me and it hit me in my eye.
- 5 The seating arrangement in the restaurant was not very good. Our table was next to the kitchen.
- 6 You can borrow my notes from the lessons, if you want. They're on my desk.
- 7 I couldn't find my hat because it was under my bed.
- 8 Excuse me? Where's the bank? Turn right at the post office, go straight on and then turn right again at the traffic lights.
- 9 My summer house is in front of the lake.
- 10 My son is there sitting among the other children.

TR 18

Unit 12 ex. 6

- 1 People usually put their TV antennas on the roof.
- 2 You usually park a car in a garage.
- 3 You find cash dispensers in a bank.
- 4 You usually put a carpet on the floor.
- 5 You usually push a chair under a table.
- 6 People catch planes at the airport.
- 7 Animals in a zoo live in cages.
- 8 You usually put a ladder against a wall.
- 9 People usually wear hats on their head.
- 10 Lions live in Africa.

TR 19

Unit 13 ex. 3

- 1 The first man landed on the moon on 21st July 1969.
- 2 In Italy football matches are usually played on Sundays.
- 3 There will be a space rocket launch in the morning.
- 4 In Britain children start school in September.
- 5 I got married at the age of 26.
- 6 Internet became popular in the Nineties.
- 7 It's difficult for the teacher to understand when all the students talk at the same time.
- 8 Teresa isn't here at the moment.

TR 20

Unit 13 ex. 6

- 1 Easter is always on a Sunday.
- 2 Friday comes before Saturday.
- 3 Friday comes after Thursday.
- 4 The bank is never open at weekends, only on weekdays.
- 5 During your holiday did you visit any museums?
- 6 You must finish your homework by 7.30 p.m., before
- 7 This project must be finished in a week and no later.
- 8 The bus is leaving in two minutes.

TR 21

Unit 14 ex. 3

- The cruise ship is very big and can't pass under the harbour bridge.
- 2 Look! That girl is running towards the restaurant after her hat.
- 3 We're walking to the cinema.
- 4 I'm afraid to climb up that ladder.
- 5 The woman swam across the English Channel to raise money for charity.
- 6 The police officer ran along the street after the bank robber.

TR 22

Unit 14 ex. 4

- 1 Samantha is tired so she's going up the stairs to bed.
- When I'm not in a hurry, I walk along Richmond Street and catch the bus there.
- 3 When my son comes out of school, he always runs into the garden.
- 4 The horse jumped over the fence and ran through the river, getting the rider all wet.
- 5 When you try to drive through a new city for the first time, it's easy to get lost.
- 6 The Moon goes round the Earth.
- 7 It's impossible to get into the house without a key.
- 8 She always dives into the swimming pool in the deep end of the pool.
- 9 The journey was so long! I'm glad to be able to get out of the car.
- 10 I love walking along quiet country roads at the weekend with my family.

TR 23

Unit 15 ex. 1

- 1 Put on your coat!
- 2 Don't talk so loudly!
- 3 Don't take off your shoes!
- 4 Don't point at people!
- 5 Don't chew gum in class!
- 6 Clean up this mess!
- 7 Brush your teeth!
- 8 Don't take away these folders!
- 9 Wake up early tomorrow!
- 10 Don't copy the person next to you!
- 11 Leave the room!
- 12 Don't bite your nails!

Unit 15 ex. 2

Dear Paul, here's a list of things you must remember. Don't forget to feed the turtles and lock the door and close the windows when you go out. Eat fruit and vegetables every day. Put the plates in the dishwasher after meals. Wash the floors. Fold your clothes. Don't open the door to strangers and don't invite any friends. Phone me every day. My phone number is 07739876248. Take out the rubbish.

See you in a week. Love, Mum

TR 25

Unit 15 ex. 5

- 1 Let her borrow your jumper.
- 2 Let him stay out late.
- 3 Let me give you a makeover.
- 4 Let Kate go swimming.
- 5 Let them ride their bikes to school.
- 6 Let him have a snack.

TR 26

Unit 17 ex. 1

- 1 You must tell us some more about your adventures in Asia
- 2 He wants some more dessert. Do we have any left?
- 3 She asked me for some ice, but I didn't have any in the freezer.
- 4 There is some iced tea in the kitchen, but there isn't any coffee.
- 5 You can't have any more watermelon because I want to save some for Michael.
- 6 Would you like some parmesan on your pasta?
- 7 I want to buy some flowers, as we don't have any in the garden right now.
- 8 You can have some of my chocolate when you don't have any of your own left.
- 9 There aren't any matches left. We must buy some more.
- 10 Is there anything good to eat? Yes, there's some roast chicken in the kitchen.
- 11 Can you give me some information about the Outdoors Adventure Course?
- 12 I don't have any time to do more painting now.
- 13 Why don't you get some money out at the cashpoint?
- 14 Didn't I give you some of my DVDs to watch yesterday? I'm certain I did!
- 15 Are there any unemployed people in your village?

TR 27

Unit 17 ex. 6

Dad Hi, Alex. I'm at the local greengrocer's but I forgot to bring mum's shopping list. Can you go to the kitchen and tell me what we need?

Alex Yes, sure. One minute. Right, what do you want to know?

Dad Have we got any tomatoes or any carrots?

Alex There aren't many tomatoes, only one, and I can't see any carrots. There isn't much broccoli, either. We've got some cheese, but I think we need a few cartons of apple juice. Oh, and some ham. There are also no strawberry yogurts left. Tom ate them all.

Dad OK. And what about food from the store cupboard, like pasta and rice?

Alex Well, we've got some pasta left, but just half a pack. But I think we've got some fresh pasta.

There are a few packets of rice in the cupboard, too.

Dad Is there any milk?

Alex No, we've got none. We've also only got a little coffee left, so get some of that.

Dad Anything else?

Alex Yeah, there's no ice cream in the freezer. You know I love ice cream!

Dad OK, OK, I'll pick you up some. Chocolate, right?

Alex Of course! Thanks dad!

TR 28

Unit 18 ex. 5

Andrew Let's have a few friends over for something to eat.

Beth Great idea. What should we cook?

Andrew I have my mother's recipe for shepherd's pie.

Beth Perfect! Let's make a list of things to buy. How much beef do we need?

Andrew Half a kilo.

Beth How many onions?

Andrew Two.

Beth Do we need many carrots?

Andrew No, not many. Only four.

Beth And mushrooms?

Andrew We'll need a lot of them.

Beth And how much flour?

Andrew About 100 grams. Then, we'll also need a lot of potatoes, but not much butter.

Beth And cheese. Will we need much cheese?

Andrew No, not much.

Beth Okay. I've written it all down. I hope I can find all the ingredients at the supermarket.

Unit 20 ex. 3

- 1 Germany's flag is black, red and gold.
- 2 The local council's new rules are unpopular.
- 3 My sister's room is on the second floor.
- 4 France's capital is Paris.
- 5 My friend's son competed in the Olympics.
- 6 The dog's food bowl is in the kitchen.
- 7 London's biggest park is Hyde Park.
- 8 My brother's website has had over 20,000 views.

TR 30

Unit 20 ex. 4

Timothy We had a very nice day at the beach, didn't

we? Let's get ready to go home now. Is this

your bathing suit, Samantha?

Samantha Is it a bikini? I have a black one.

Timothy No, it's a one-piece bathing suit.

Samantha Then it must be Jenny's. I'll give it to her.

Timothy Oh, here's a thermos. It isn't mine. Who

does it belong to?

Bella It's Julie's. She said she'll come to pick it up

at my house tomorrow.

Timothy Is this brown towel yours, Bella?

Bella No, it's Samantha's. Mine is blue and red.

Timothy What's in this paper bag? Oh, something

smells terrible! Someone has left their egg sandwiches in the sun and now they have

gone bad.

Samantha They're probably Julie's.

Bella No, they aren't. Julie didn't bring any lunch.

They're Robert's. He forgot to eat today!

Samantha Oh and here are your sunglasses, Bella. You

put them in my bag.

TR 31

Unit 21 ex. 4

- 1 Tom has decided to grow a beard, so he's stopped shaving.
- 2 He got out of the shower, took a towel and dried himself.
- 3 I tried to read but I just couldn't concentrate.
- 4 My husband and I met at school.
- 5 After work I only want to relax.
- 6 It was a wonderful evening. We really enjoyed ourselves.
- 7 I didn't have time to wash or make the bed this morning.
- 8 She has made herself very popular since she started her new job.

TR 32

Unit 22 ex. 8

- 1 longer
- 2 the fastest
- 3 the tallest
- 4 nicer
- 5 far
- 6 the furthest
- 7 the easiest
- 8 higher
- 9 clever
- 10 the best

TR 33

Unit 24 ex. 5

- 1 Was the cake delicious? No, it was too sweet.
- 2 Was it fun? Yes, but it was too crowded.
- 3 Was the concert interesting? No, it was awful.
- 4 Were you bored with your relatives? No, it was fun.
- 5 Was it spicy? Yes, it was, but it was delicious.
- 6 Were they tennis shoes? No, they were basketball shoes.

TR 34

Unit 25 ex. 4

- 1 Alison was born on the 13th of November 1996. She grew up in Paris until she was 10 years old when her parents moved to Kent in the UK.
- 2 Until last year I hated spiders so much that I decided to do something about my fear and signed up for the Friendly Spider Programme at the London Zoo.
- 3 Two friends from Madrid spent 20 days on a desert island after their boat sank. Fortunately, the rescue team found them alive and well.
- 4 During the school summer athletic games, my class won 12 track and field medals and we also came second in the 100m swimming race.

TR 35

Unit 31 ex. 7

- 1 I'm certain I'll recognise him.
- 2 I'm seeing her tomorrow after school.
- 3 Tom's catching the 5.30 a.m. train.
- 4 I'm going there again next year.
- 5 I suppose we'll find out tonight.
- 6 I'll believe it when I see it.
- 7 We hope that she'll have a good time tomorrow.
- 8 What are you going to do when you finish school?
- 9 I'm sure you will like them.
- 10 You won't need the big basket, will you?
 Yes, I will. I'm going to buy a lot of vegetables.

Unit 33 ex. 4

- 1 What a pity they couldn't come!
- 2 How wonderful to see you!
- 3 How dark is your hair!
- 4 What a silly mistake!
- 5 What a funny thing to say!
- 6 What a coincidence!
- 7 What lovely music I hear!
- 8 What a terrible person!
- 9 How beautiful you look this evening!
- 10 How easy this exercise is!
- 11 What an interesting book!
- 12 What a name to give a child!

TR 37

Unit 35 ex. 1

- 1 He can read English, can't he?
- 2 She has a sister, hasn't she?
- 3 I must do it now, mustn't I?
- 4 You have never given a speech, have you?
- 5 John likes coffee, doesn't he?
- 6 He didn't live here, did he?
- 7 No one believes him, do they?
- 8 They could swim well, couldn't they?
- 9 There were many people, weren't there?
- 10 Turn the light off, will you?
- 11 She won a lot of money, didn't she?
- 12 Nothing's going well, is it?

TR 38

Unit 40 ex. 1

- 1 The children were treated to some ice cream.
- 2 The instruments were played beautifully.
- 3 Nothing was done until he came.
- 4 She will be met at the station.
- 5 You will have to be tested again.
- 6 Sally was given a lot of pocket money.

Grammar Plus B1

Editorial coordination: Simona Franzoni

Editorial department: Lisa Suett Art Director: Marco Mercatali Page design: Enea Ciccarelli Page layout: Marcello Muzi

Picture Editor: Giorgia D'Angelo, Lisa Suett Production Manager: Francesco Capitano

Cover design: Paola Lorenzetti

© 2013 ELI S.r.I P.O. Box 6 62019 Recanati Italy Tel. +39 071 750701 Fax. +39 071 977851 info@elionline.com www.elionline.com

Acknowledgements

Photos: Shutterstock

No unauthorised photocopying.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ELI.

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, resold, hired out, or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior consent in any form of binding or cover than that in which it is published and without a similar condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

While every effort has been made to trace all the copyright holders, if any have been inadvertently overlooked the publisher will be pleased to make the necessary arrangements at the first opportunity.

Printed in Italy by Grafiche Flaminia - Trevi (PG) 13.83.125.0

ISBN 978-88-536-1530-5

Unit 1

exercise 1

1 is, 2 aren't, 3 Are, aren't, are 4 Is, 5 is, is, are, 6 am, 7 are, 8 is

exercise 2

- 1 Aren't you going to the beach today?
- 2 They are playing the main role in the play.
- 3 He is not feeling very well today.
- 4 Are you taking a bus to the airport?
- 5 Isn't she cold, wearing just a T-shirt?
- 6 It is not raining very much anymore.
- 7 You're looking better after the operation.
- 8 Are they going to the cinema tonight?

exercise 3

- 1 She isn't a nice woman. / Is she a nice woman?
- 2 They aren't firemen. / Are they firemen?
- 3 He isn't always on time for swimming lessons. / Is he always on time for swimming lessons?
- 4 You aren't very organised. / Are you very organised?
- 5 It isn't cold outside this evening?

Is it cold outside this evening?

6 She isn't a computer programmer?

Is she a computer programmer?

exercise 4

1 What, 2 Where, 3 Who, 4 Whose, 5 What,

exercise 5

1 What, 2 How, 3 Who, 4 Where, 5 Whose, 6 Why, 7 What, 8 Which

exercise 6

1 c, 2 e, 3 a, 4 f, 5 b, 6 d

exercise 7

1 Yes, I am. / No, I'm not. 2 Yes, I am. / No, I'm not. 3 Yes, we are. / No, we aren't. 4 Yes, they are. / No, they aren't. 5 Yes, he is. / No, he isn't. 6 Yes, they are. / No, they aren't. 7 Yes, it is. / No, it isn't. 8 Yes, it is. / No, it isn't.

exercise 8

1 There are, 2 There are, 3 There is, 4 There are, 5 There is, 6 There are

exercise 9

(Answers may vary)

- 1 There is a girl on the bed.
- 2 There are four people in a queue.
- 3 There is a bird on the twig.
- 4 There is a happy little girl on a swing.

Unit 2

exercise 1

1 an, 2 an, 3 an, 4 a, 5 a, 6 a, 7 an, 8 a, 9 an, 10 an, 11 a, 12 an

exercise 2

- 1 I always eat an apple after breakfast.
- 2 My brother bought an interesting book about elephants.
- 3 Maryanne saw a famous singer in town.
- 4 Italy is a sunny country.
- 5 Max had a fantastic birthday party.
- 6 I usually take a packed lunch to school.

exercise 3

1 a, 2 /, 3 a, 4 a, a, 5 A, /, /, 6 a, 7 a, an, 8 a, 9 a, 10 an

exercise 4

- 1 Dogs are animals.
- 2 Potatoes are vegetables.
- 3 Some leaves fell off the trees.
- 4 Pencils are like pens.
- 5 Writers write books.
- 6 Gardens usually have bushes.
- 7 Parties are fun ways to celebrate your birthday.
- 8 Wishes are special dreams.

- 1 These giraffes are taller than those tigers.
- 2 These houses are bigger than those ones.
- 3 These are tasty cakes.
- 4 Those are interesting paintings.
- 5 These are sad films.
- 6 Those goats escaped from the field(s).

7 These are bicycles and those are motorbikes.

8 Those are friendly dogs.

exercise 6

1 these, 2 that, 3 those, 4 this, 5 these, 6 that, 7 those, 8 this

exercise 7

1a, 2b, 3b, 4a, 5b, 6b, 7a, 8a

exercise 8

1a, 2a, 3a, 4b, 5b

exercise 9

- 1 I am doing a unit in my exercise book.
- 2 That is a great car.
- 3 My favourite snack is an apple.
- 4 Is that my memory stick over there?
- 5 I like those people very much.
- 6 We don't need to wear a uniform to school.
- 7 My sister is coming in an hour.
- 8 These exercises are helpful.
- 9 Put the knives and forks on the table, please.
- 10 My mother is a teacher.

Unit 3

exercise 1

1 /, 2 the, 3 the, 4 /, 5 the, 6 /, 7 /, 8 the, 9 the, the, 10 the, 11 the, 12 the, the, 13 the, 14 the, 15 /, 16 /, 17 the, the, 18 /, the

exercise 2

- 1 The furniture in your house is beautiful.
- 2 Where is the sugar?
- 3 His glasses are on the table.
- 4 Where are the teachers?
- 5 Fruit and vegetables are healthy for you.
- 6 The parks in my city are beautiful.
- 7 The weather is nice today!
- 8 My brother and my sister-in-law live in Amsterdam.
- 9 The students are in the classroom.
- 10 Sharks eat smaller fish.

exercise 3

- 2 Do you watch the news every day?
- 3 I love cakes, but the cakes my wife makes are really special.
- 4 When I was a child I visited France,

Germany, and the Netherlands.

- 5 The sweaters in that shop are expensive.
- 8 Birds love to eat seeds.
- 9 I have some meat and fish in the fridge. The meat is fine, but fish isn't fresh.
- 10 I enjoy tennis, but I prefer playing cards.

exercise 4

(Answers may vary)

- 1 Mike took a trip to the USA.
- 2 Paul and Hannah are in the same class.
- 3 Megan plays the keyboard.
- 4 Louise went on a boat ride on the River Thames.
- 5 When did the marathon race start?
- 6 Where are the papers I had on my desk?
- 7 These jeans are the only one that fits me.
- 8 The police have an important job.

exercise 5

1 /, /, 2 /, 3 a, /, 4 the, the, 5 the, 6 a, a, 7 the, a, 8 a, /, 9 the, the, /, 10 /, the, 11 a, 12 an, the, 13 a, the, /, 14/, /, 15 the, the, 16 a, /, a

exercise 6

I like tennis. I'm also very good at swimming, but I don't like swimming pools very much because there are always too many people there. But the swimming pool near our house is very nice. I often go there on Saturday mornings. I meet my friends and we have lunch at the cafeteria after we swim. I usually have a sandwich. There is also a big glass window in the cafeteria, and you can watch the swimmers while you eat.

Unit 4

exercise 1

1 one, the, one, 2 the ones, 3 one, one, 4 the one, 5 the one, 6 the ones

1 one, 2 ones, 3 one, 4 one, 5 one, 6 ones, ones, 7 ones, ones, 8 one

Unit 5

exercise 1

1 it, 2 them, 3 him, 4 them, 5 her, 6 it, 7 me, 8 us, 9 you, 10 him

exercise 2

1 him, 2 them, 3 it, 4 us, 5 her, 6 them, 7 it, 8 you, 9 us, 10 him

exercise 3

1 his, 2 your, 3 his, 4 his/your, 5 their, their, 6 my, 7 her, 8 our, 9 Its, 10 her

exercise 4

1 yours, 2 mine, 3 theirs, ours, 4 his, hers, 5 mine, yours, 6 mine, yours, 7 hers, hers, 8 hers, 9 ours, mine, yours, 10 ours, theirs, ours, theirs

exercise 5

1 my, yours, 2 my, mine, 3 her, mine, my, hers, 4 your, his, 5 our, theirs, 6 yours, 7 her, 8 our, yours, 9 their, theirs, 10 our, my

exercise 6

1 My, she, me, 2 it, my 3 my, his, 4 you, 5 me, I, 6 him, 7 you, us, 8 hers, 9 their, 10 he, me

exercise 7

1 you, 2 your, 3 them, 4 I, 5 We, 6 She, 7 it, 8 He, 9 your, 10 them

exercise 8

1 I love your jacket.

3 Her bags are there. Can you get them for her?

5 They've got a dog and a cat but I don't know their names.

7 Who are they? We have never seen them before.

10 Who are those people? I want to talk to them.

Unit 6

exercise 1

1 has got, 2 have got, 3 hasn't got, 4 hasn't got, 5 haven't got, 6 haven't got, 7 has got, 8 has got

exercise 2

1 Have you got any hobbies?

2 Have you got a summer house?

3 Have you got a big car?

4 Has he got any pets?

5 Do they have a swimming pool?

6 Have you got a PC?

exercise 3

1 Yes. I have.

2 Yes, he has.

3 No, she hasn't.

4 Yes, we have.

5 Yes, I have.

6 No, they haven't.

7 Yes, we have.

8 No, they haven't.

exercise 4

1 Clare has got brown eyes. Clare hasn't got brown eyes. Has Clare got brown eyes? Hasn't Clare got brown eyes?

2 Nikolai has got a beard. Nikolai hasn't got a beard. Has Nikolai got a beard? Hasn't Nikolai got a beard?

3 They've got a small flat. They haven't got a small flat. Have they got a small flat? Haven't they got a small flat?

4 She's got long, brown hair. She hasn't got long, brown hair. Has she got long, brown hair? Hasn't she got long, brown air?

5 The club's got a swimming pool. The club hasn't got a swimming pool. Has the club got a swimming pool? Hasn't the club got a swimming pool?

6 We've got a skateboard. We haven't got a skateboard. Have we got a skateboard? Haven't we got a skateboard?

1 have got, 2 has got, 4 have they got, 5 have you got

exercise 6

- 1 Frank has got a new tennis racket.
- 2 Tim has a shower before school every day.
- 3 She usually has her holiday in August.
- 4 Did you have a nice flight?
- 5 I often have a shower when I get home.
- 6 Mrs Broad wants to have a chat with you.

exercise 7

(Sample answers)

- 1 The teenagers are having a party.
- 2 The girls are having a chat.
- 3 They're having an argument.
- 4 They're having a picnic.
- 5 He's having a wash.
- 6 They're having breakfast.

exercise 8

(Open answer)

Unit 7

exercise 1

1 breaks, 2 moves, 3 sell, 4 talk, 5 work, 6 know, 7 leave, 8 cuts, 9 melts, 10 spend

exercise 2

- 1 What kind of music does he enjoy?
- 2 Where does your best friend live?
- 3 How often do you play tennis?
- 4 How do they get to the office?
- 5 What time does he wake up in the morning?
- 6 Where do they spend their holidays?
- 7 What do you do at the weekends?
- 8 Where do you live?

(Open answer)

exercise 3

(Open answer)

exercise 4

- 1 Who goes by car?
- 2 When do they wake up?
- 3 Who works in a travel agency?

- 4 How often does he go to the gym?
- 5 Who do you like visiting at the weekend?
- 6 Who likes smoked salmon?
- 7 What do they like?
- 8 What does Tony study?

exercise 5

1 The dog loves to play ball. The dog doesn't love to play ball. Does the dog love to play ball? Doesn't the dog love to play ball? 2 Joe's mother works in a bank. Joe's mother doesn't work in a bank. Does Joe's mother work in a bank? Doesn't Joe's mother work in a bank?

3 She brushes her hair before bed. She doesn't brush her hair before bed. Does she brush her hair before bed? Doesn't she brush her hair before bed?

4 Jenny reads fashion blogs. Jenny doesn't read fashion blogs. Does Jenny read fashion blogs? Doesn't Jenny read fashion blogs? 5 You drive very fast. You don't drive very fast. Do you drive very fast? Don't you drive very fast?

6 Motorcycles make a lot of noise. Motorcycles don't make a lot of noise. Do motorcycles make a lot of noise? Don't motorcycles make a lot of noise?

exercise 6

- 1 He never gets up before half past nine.
- 2 I usually drink my tea with milk.
- 3 The children often argue with each other.
- 4 I sometimes travel by train.
- 5 She rarely knows what to say.
- 6 I seldom understand these exercises.
- 7 Do they ever go to the theatre?
- 8 We are always late.

exercise 7

(Sample answer)

- 1 I always listen to music.
- 2 I seldom eat takeaway food.
- 3 I often read books.
- 4 I always go to the beach in the summer.
- 5 I usually help my parents at home.
- 6 I sometimes spend time on the Internet.

Unit 8

exercise 1

- 1 France, French, a Frenchman/woman, the French
- 2 Poland, Polish, a Pole, the Poles
- 3 England, English, an Englishman/woman, the English
- 4 Ireland, Irish, an Irishman/woman, the Irish
- 5 Japan, Japanese, a Japanese, the Japanese
- 6 Switzerland, Swiss, a Swiss, the Swiss
- 7 Germany, German, a German, the Germans
- 8 Greece, Greek, a Greek, the Greeks
- 9 Wales, Welsh, a Welshman/woman, the Welsh
- 10 China, Chinese, a Chinese, the Chinese

exercise 2

- 1 Tulips are typical Dutch flowers.
- 2 He drives an Italian car.
- 3 Feta is a Greek cheese.
- 4 There are two Swiss in my class.
- 5 He drinks German beer.
- 6 The Spanish live in Spain.
- 7 The Americans speak English, too.
- 8 The French speak French.

exercise 3

- 1 twenty past five (in the afternoon)
- 2 ten past eight (in the morning)
- 3 nine o'clock (in the morning)
- 4 twenty-five past midnight
- 5 half past three (in the afternoon)
- 6 A quarter to nine (in the morning)
- 7 ten to one (in the afternoon)
- 8 five past eight (in the afternoon)
- 9 twenty-five to five (in the morning)
- 10 twenty-five past four (in the afternoon)
- 11 a quarter past eleven (in the afternoon)
- 12 five to seven (in the morning)

exercise 4

- 1 What time does school start? It starts at 8.05
- 2 What time do you have breakfast? I have breakfast at 7.15 a.m.
- 3 What time do they leave home? They leave home at 8 a.m.

- 4 What time does the post office close? It closes at 5.30 p.m.
- 5 Does the train leave at 4? No, it doesn't. It leaves at 3.50 p.m.
- 6 Do the banks close at 1.30? No, they don't. They close at 5 p.m.

exercise 5

(Open answer)

exercise 6

- 1 Wednesday the eleventh of August, nineteen ninety-nine
- 2 Friday the twenty-first of November, nineteen seventy
- 3 Sunday the fourth of July, seventeen seventy-six
- 4 Tuesday the second of September, nineteen ninety
- 5 Monday the tenth of March, nineteen thirty-two
- 6 Thursday the third of April, two thousand and two

exercise 7

(Open answer)

exercise 8

- 1 The first of October, nineteen ninety-three
- 2 A quarter past five
- 3 Thursday, the nineteenth of July, two thousand and twelve
- 4 Twenty minutes to six
- 5 Half past ten
- 6 The twenty-ninth of November, nineteen fifty-three
- 7 Fourteen minutes past midnight
- 8 Tuesday, the thirty-first of January, two thousand

Unit 9

- 1 I never send them to him.
- 2 I always give them to my boss.
- 3 Laura and Sylvia often take it out for a walk
- 4 Give them to Lucy, please.

5 I often buy them for my grandmother. 6 He rarely shows them to his friends.

exercise 2

- 1 Why don't you phone the police for me?
- 2 Why don't you get some strawberries for your recipe?
- 3 They don't often take it to school.
- 4 The farmer always gives me free eggs.
- 5 Why don't we send them chocolates for their anniversary?
- 6 We don't want to take them to England.

exercise 3

- 1 I often buy her flowers.
- 2 Why don't you give him some money?
- 3 Could you pass us the plates, please?
- 4 I bought you these jeans.
- 5 They want to buy us a drink.
- 6 He rarely lend his friends money.
- 7 We always bring them souvenirs.
- 8 You never do me favours.

exercise 4

- 1 I take him/her the class register every morning.
- 2 Give her the key.
- 3 Can you give him/her the money, please?
- 4 When I go on holiday, I always bring them something home.
- 5 She gives them homework every day.
- 6 The technician checks them once a month.

exercise 5

- 1 She/He explained it to them.
- 2 He is out with her for a meal.
- 3 We give them to her on her birthday.
- 4 It is for him.
- 5 They often come to see us.
- 6 It usually chases them.
- 7 It is for us.
- 8 She is with them for the day.

Unit 10

exercise 1

1 making, 2 sitting, 3 forgetting, 4 beginning, 5 swimming, 6 driving, 7 starting, 8 shopping,

9 taking, 10 lying, 11 emailing, 12 queueing, 13 travelling, 14 copying, 15 panicking, 16 showing

exercise 2

1 am listening, 2 is studying, 3 are playing, 4 are working, 5 am living, 6 am going, 7 is having, 8 is crying, 9 are reading

exercise 3

- 1 I'm studying English in the USA this year.
- 2 They are learning Chinese with a private teacher
- 3 Vicky is playing golf now.
- 4 'Are you going shopping?' 'No, I'm going to the dentist's.'
- 5 Is your brother going to Naples by train?
- 6 'What is your mum doing?' 'She's cutting the grass in the garden.'
- 7 'What are you doing?' 'I'm having lunch.'

exercise 4

- 1 I'm not talking on the phone.
- 2 Hannah is doing her English exercises.
- 3 Simon is swimming.
- 4 Marcus and Ivan aren't watching a TV programme.
- 5 Oliver is listening to the teacher.
- 6 Lauren is looking for her glasses.
- 7 Emily isn't having lunch.
- 8 Greg and Cara are concentrating on their work.

- 1 She is working on her blog. / She isn't working on her blog. / Is she working on her blog? / Isn't she working on her blog?
- 2 He's teaching his son to ride a bike. / He isn't teaching his son to ride a bike. / Is he teaching his son to ride a bike? / Isn't he teaching his son to ride a bike?
- 3 The plane is flying at 2,000 metres. / The plane isn't flying at 2,000 meters. / Is the plane flying at 2,000 metres? / Isn't the plane flying at 2,000 metres?
- 4 Tom is cleaning his shoes. / Tom isn't cleaning his shoes. / Is Tom cleaning his shoes? / Isn't Tom cleaning his shoes?

5 Rupert is repairing the motorbike. / Rupert isn't repairing the motorbike. / Is Rupert repairing the motorbike? / Isn't Rupert repairing the motorbike?

6 They are digging an enormous hole. / They aren't digging an enormous hole. / Are they digging an enormous hole? / Aren't they digging an enormous hole?

7 The firemen are putting out the fire. / The firemen aren't putting out the fire. / Are the firemen putting out the fire? / Aren't the firemen putting out the fire?

8 Lisa is knocking at the door. / Lisa isn't knocking at the door. / Is Lisa knocking at the door? / Isn't Lisa knocking at the door?

exercise 6

1 are they going, are taking

2 isn't working, is swimming

3 is going, Is someone bringing

4 Is it raining, is raining

5 listens

6 do you usually have

7 is moving, is painting

8 are you reading, am reading

9 Do you understand, is explaining

10 helps, works

exercise 7

1 know, 2 is shining, are singing, 4 is sleeping, 5 love, 7 refuse, 8 are saying

exercise 8

1 accepting, 2 are, 3 doing, 4 visiting, 5 taking, 6 signing, 7 are, 8 staying, 9 are, 10 working, 11 finishing

Unit 11

exercise 1

1 must, 2 had to, 3 must, 4 have to, 5 had to, 6 must

exercise 2

1 can, 2 could, 3 can/could, 4 couldn't, 5 could, 6 won't be able to

exercise 3

1 should, 2 should have, 3 shouldn't have, 4 should, 5 shouldn't have, 6 shouldn't

exercise 4

1 mustn't, 2 must, 3 needn't, 4 must, 5 needn't, 6 mustn't

exercise 5

1 We may/might go to the beach later.

2 We may/might not find a table at that restaurant...

3 She may/might call us if...

4 ... he may/might be able to suggest a cure.

5 Tony and Maria may move to Liverpool.

6 My dad may change his job.

Unit 12

exercise 1

1 at, 2 at, 3 at, at, in, 4 at, at, 5 in, 6 at, 7 at, in, 8 at, 9 in, 10 in

exercise 2

1 on the back of the envelope

2 in Rome

3 at the back of the class

4 on the right

5 in the front row

6 on my way to work

7 on the front page of the newspaper

8 in Austria

9 on the East Coast

10 on the sofa

exercise 3

1 in, 2 in, 3 on, on, 4 in, 5 on, 6 on, 7 at, 8 at, 9 in, in, 10 on, 11 in, 12 at, 13 in, 14 at, 15 at, 16 in, 17 at, 18 in, 19 in, on 20 on

exercise 4

1 near, at/on, 2 over, 3 at, 4 in, 5 next to, 6 at, 7 on, 8 under

exercise 5

1 on, 2 beside, 3 out of, 4 in, 5 in, next to, 6 on, 7 under, 8 at, at, 9 in front of, 10 among

- 1 People usually put their TV antennas on the roof.
- 2 I usually park a car in a garage.
- 3 You find cash dispensers in a bank.
- 4 You usually put a carpet on the floor.
- 5 You usually push a chair under a table.
- 6 People catch planes at the airport.
- 7 Animals in a zoo live in cages.
- 8 You usually put a ladder against a wall.
- 9 People usually wear hats on their head,
- 10 Lions live in Africa.

Unit 13

exercise 1

1 at, 2 on, 3 in, 4 on, 5 at, 6 /, 7 at, 8 in, 9 in, 10 in, 11 at, 12 at, 13 /, 14 on, 15 in, 16 at, 17 in, 18 /, 19 at, 20 within, 21 at, 22 /, 23 in, 24 on

exercise 2

1 for, 2 during, 3 for, 4 for, 5 for, 6 for, 7 during, 8 for, 9 during, 10 during, 11 for, 12 during

exercise 3

- 1 on 21st July 1969
- 2 on Sundays
- 3 in the morning
- 4 in September
- 5 at the age of 26
- 6 in the Nineties
- 7 at the same time
- 8 at the moment

exercise 4

1 at, 2 in, 3 on, on, 4 at, in, 5 in, 6 at, 7 on, at, 8 in, 9 on, 10 in, on 11 in, at, 12 at, 13 in, 14 on

exercise 5

1 until, 2 by, 3 until, 4 until, 5 by, 6 by, 7 until, 8 until, 9 by, 10 by

exercise 6

1 on, 2 before, 3 after, 4 at, on, 5 during, 6 by, before, 7 within, 8 in

Unit 14

exercise 1

1 along, 2 through, 3 around, 4 towards, 5 to, 6 under, 7 out of, 8 across

exercise 2

1 around, 2 into, 3 across, 4 out of, 5 through, 6 up

exercise 3

1c under, 2e towards, 3f to, 4b up, 5a across, 6e along

exercise 4

1 up, 2 along, 3 out of, into, 4 over, through, 5 through, 6 round, 7 into, 8 into, 9 out of, 10 along

exercise 5

1 to, 2 at, 3 into, 4 to, 5 to, 6 to, 7 to, 8 by, 9 at, to, 10 in, 11 to, 12 to, 13 by/to, 14 into, 15 to, 16 to, 17 by

exercise 6

1 through, 2 through, along, over, 3 over, 4 out of, into, 5 by, 6 around, towards, 7 through, 8 from, 9 away from, 10 under

Unit 15

exercise 1

- 1 Put on your coat!
- 2 Don't talk so loudly!
- 3 Don't take off your shoes!
- 4 Don't point at people!
- 5 Don't chew gum in class!
- 6 Clean up this mess!
- 7 Brush your teeth!
- 8 Don't take away these folders!
- 9 Wake up early tomorrow!
- 10 Don't copy the person next to you!
- 11 Leave the room!
- 12 Don't bite your nails!

exercise 2

1 don't forget, 2 lock, close, 3 eat, 4 put, 5

wash, 6 fold, 7 don't open, 8 don't invite, 9 phone, 10 take out

exercise 3

- 1 Let's do our homework. Let's not listen to music.
- 2 Let's try. Let's not give up.
- 3 Let's turn on the air conditioning. Let's not stay in the sun.
- 4 Let's visit her on Tuesday.
- 5 Let's ask for directions.
- 6 Let's not rent this flat.
- 7 Let's not leave our rubbish on the beach.

Let's throw it in the bin.

8 Let's give him a lift.

exercise 4

- 1 Let's go to bed now!
- 2 Let's not / Don't let's eat anymore!
- 3 Let's go shopping!
- 4 Let's pull up all the weeds in the garden!
- 5 Let's not / Don't let's shout!
- 6 Let's not / Don't let's switch off the lights!
- 7 Let's finish our project today!
- 8 Let's not / Don't let's throw water balloons at them.

exercise 5

- 1 Let her borrow your jumper.
- 2 Let him stay out late.
- 3 Let me give you a makeover.
- 4 Let Kate go swimming.
- 5 Let them ride their bikes to school.
- 6 Let him have a snack.

exercise 6

- 1 Do it at once!
- 2 Don't go home alone!
- 3 Don't drink it!
- 4 Work as hard as you can!
- 5 Let me give you a lift in my car!
- 6 Light a fire!
- 7 Don't read the whole magazine!
- 8 Do what I say!
- 9 Don't choose the green one!
- 10 Let's stay here until tomorrow!

exercise 7

- 1 Stop shouting!
- 2 Fasten your seat belts!
- 3 Learn this grammar rule by heart!
- 4 Move your car!
- 5 Be quiet!
- 6 Sit down!
- 7 Don't be so noisy!
- 8 Pick up your clothes!
- 9 Don't run in the science lab!
- 10 Don't be rude!

exercise 8

- 1 Don't pay by credit card! You mustn't pay by credit card.
- 2 Don't play ball games! You mustn't play any ball games.
- 3 Don't park here! You mustn't park here.
- 4 Don't do graffiti here! You mustn't do any graffiti here.
- 5 Don't turn right! You mustn't turn right.
- 6 Don't walk on the grass! You mustn't walk on the grass.

Unit 16

exercise 1

1 U, 2 C, 3 U, 4 C, 5 C, 6 U, 7 C, 8 C, 9 C, 10 C, 11 U, 12 U, 13 U, 14 U, 15 C, 16 C, 17 U, 18 U, 19 U, 20 U, 21 C, 22 U

exercise 2

Countable: a lemon/lemons, a chicken/chickens, a pea/peas, a grape/grapes, a tomato/tomatoes, a peach/peaches, a salmon/salmon, a tuna/tuna or tunas, a yoghurt/yoghurts

Uncountable: beef, bread, cheese, lettuce, milk, pork, rice, pasta

exercise 3

1 advice, 2 some, 3 some, 4 -, potatoes, -, 5 experience, 6 a, 7 a sheet of, 8 trouble, 9 is, 10 is, -, iron 11 have, 12 sheep, the 13 a, 14 work, 15 a, 16 -, 17 -, 18 is, 19 vegetables, 20 traffic

(Open answer)

exercise 5

1 a glass, 2 a loaf, 3 a tube, 4 a bottle, 5 a cup, 6 a bar, 7 a packet, 8 a box, 9 a jar, 10 a can, 11 a tin, 12 a slice

exercise 6

(Sample answer)

1h Lightweight means that someone/thing isn't heavy.

2f Bedroom is the room where you normally sleep.

3b The Headmaster is in charge of a school.

4k You need ski boots to ski.

5m A girlfriend is a girl that someone is having a romantic relationship with.

6 A lampshade is a decorative cover for a lamp.

70 A toothbrush is a small brush for cleaning your teeth.

8i A babysitter looks after little children.

9j You use a dishwasher to wash the dishes.

10e A greengrocer is someone who sells fruit and vegetables in his/her shop.

11g A sweatshirt is a piece of clothing for the upper part of the body.

12d A candle holder holds candles.

13c The seaside is an area that is by the sea.

14l Needlepoint is a type of decorative sewing.

15n Breakfast is the meal you have in the morning.

Unit 17

exercise 1

1 some, 2 some, any 3 some, any, 4 some, any, 5 any, some, 6 some, 7 some, any, 8 some, any, 9 any, some, 10 some, 11 some, 12 any, 13 some, 14 some, 15 any

exercise 2

1 There isn't any dirty washing on the floor. Is there any dirty washing on the floor?

2 There aren't buying any fresh fruit. Are they buying any fresh fruit?

3 There aren't any eggs in the fridge. Are

there any eggs in the fridge?

4 There aren't any beautiful flowers in our garden. Are there any beautiful flowers in our garden?

5 There aren't any herbs in this recipe. Are there any herbs in this recipe?

6 We haven't got any new teachers this year. Have we got any new teachers this year?

exercise 3

1 There isn't any work to do.

2 There is no ink in my pen.

3 The teacher gives his students no time to write down the homework.

4 I didn't tell anyone except Lucy and Luca.

5 My moped needs no new tyres.

6 I haven't any energy! I can run no further.

7 They eat no meat at all. They're vegetarians.

8 I don't want any more excuses!

9 We aren't doing any more household chores today. We're exhausted!

10 There are no grapes on that vine.

exercise 4

1 some, 2 any, 3 no, 4 any, 5 some, any, 6 some, 7 any, 8 no, 9 any, 10 some

exercise 5

1 a little, 2 little, 3 few, 4 a few, 5 few, 6 a little, 7 a few, 8 little

exercise 6

1 any, 2 many, 3 any, 4 much, 5 some, 6 a few, 7 some, 8 no, 9 some, 10 some, 11 a few, 12 any, 13 none, 14 a little, 15 no, 16 some

Unit 18

exercise 1

1 many, 2 a lot of, 3 a lot of, 4 much, 5 a lot of, much, 6 much, 7 a lot of, 8 much, 9 many, 10 much

exercise 2

1 too hot, 2 too hard, 3 too loud, 4 any, 5 too far, 6 some, 7 too cold, 8 too dark, 9 too big, 10 any, 11 too late, 12 some, any

- 1 It's so cold that...
- 2 He's so nice that...
- 3 It's so big that...
- 4 She's so funny that...
- 5 There are so many flowers in the garden that...
- 6 They chat so much in class that... (*Open answer*)

exercise 4

1 many, 2 many, 3 long, 4 much, 5 often, 6 long, 7 far, 8 much, 9 often, 10 far, 11 much, 12 long, 13 often, 14 many

exercise 5

1 much, 2 many, 3 many, 4 many, 5 a lot of, 6 much, 7 a lot of / much, 8 much, 9 much, 10 much

exercise 6

(Open answer)

Unit 19

exercise 1

1 other, 2 others, 3 another, 4 others, 5 another, 6 others, 7 another, 8 another

exercise 2

1 anywhere else, 2 someone else, 3 somewhere else, 4 anything else, 5 anybody else, 6 something else, 7 anybody else, 8 something else

exercise 3

1 what else, 2 where else, 3 how else, 4 when else, 5 why else, 6 who else

exercise 4

1 every, 2 every, 3 each / every, 4 each, 5 each 6 each, 7 every, 8 every

exercise 5

1 whole, 2 all, 3 all, 4 every, 5 all, 6 every, 7 whole, 8 whole

exercise 6

- 1 I love both swimming and playing tennis.
- 2 James has been both to Japan and to China.
- 3 Davina doesn't like neither cheese nor fish.
- 4 She hates both dancing and parties.
- 5 I like your dog. He's both sweet and affectionate.
- 6 Harriet is interested both in History and Art. / Harriet is interested in both History and Art.

exercise 7

- 1 I want to see neither of the films. I don't want to see either of the films.
- 2 I like neither of them. I don't like either of them.
- 3 I will download neither of them. I won't download either of them.
- 4 No, he eats neither meat nor fish. No, he doesn't eat either meat or fish,
- 5 He bought neither of them. He didn't buy either of them.
- 6 It is on neither of them. It isn't on either of them.

Unit 20

exercise 1

- 1 London's main river is the River Thames.
- 2 Last week's weather was really terrible.
- 3 Tom broke Georgia's sunglasses.
- 4 My brother's hair is red, but mine is brown.
- 5 John's bedroom at the university residence is really big.
- 6 The cat's fur got wet in the rain.

- 1 These are the teacher's technology magazines.
- 2 That is Mr and Mrs Ross's house.
- 3 These are some of the university's new courses.
- 4 This is the UN's headquarters in New York.
- 5 This is Kim and William's new phone number.
- 6 This is my sister's new tablet computer.
- 7 This is the airport's new terminal building.
- 8 This is my grandmother's great recipe for toffee apples.

- 1 Germany's flag is black, red and gold.
- 2 The local council's new rules are unpopular.
- 3 My sister's room is on the second floor.
- 4 France's capital is Paris.
- 5 My friend's son competed in the Olympics.
- 6 The dog's food bowl is in the kitchen.
- 7 London's biggest park is Hyde Park.
- 8 My brother's website has had over 20,000 views.

exercise 4

1 black, 2 Jenny's, 3 Julie's, 4 Samantha's, 5 Julie's, 6 egg sandwiches, 7 Robert's, 8 Bella's

exercise 5

- 1 Whose laptop is that?
- 2 Whose flip-flops are those?
- 3 Whose is this smartphone?
- 4 Whose are these glasses?
- 5 Whose bike is that?
- 6 Whose are those batteries?
- 7 Whose are these exam results?
- 8 Whose photo is that?

Unit 21

exercise 1

1 burn yourself, 2 locked themselves, 3 blame himself, 4 kick myself, 5 hurt herself, 6 teach myself, 7 look after itself, 8 looking at himself

exercise 2

- 1 styled it myself
- 2 bought it myself
- 3 told me herself
- 4 cleans it herself
- 5 finish it myself
- 6 get it yourself
- 7 sees herself
- 8 was talking to himself
- 9 are painting it themselves
- 10 get them yourselves

exercise 3

1 by ourselves, 2 by myself, 3 by himself, 4 by themselves, 5 by herself, 6 by itself

exercise 4

1 shaving, 2 dried himself, 3 concentrate, 4 met, 5 relax, 6 enjoyed ourselves, 7 wash, 8 made herself

exercise 5

1 one another, 2 each other, 3 one another, 4 each other, 5 one another, 6 each other, 7 one another, 8 each other, 9 one another, 10 each other

exercise 6

1 getting more interesting, 2 to get upset, 3 getting hungry, 4 getting boring, 5 getting warmer, 6 getting too difficult, 7 gets worried, 8 get angry, 9 getting dressed, 10 getting better, 11 get dirty, 12 get wet

Unit 22

exercise 1

1 taller, 2 larger, 3 warmer, 4 more interesting, 5 bigger, 6 more relaxing, 7 more playful, 8 more slowly

exercise 2

1 softer, 2 more clever, 3 younger, 4 tidier, 5 stricter, 6 more dangerous, 7 more, 8 funnier

exercise 3

- 1 A Ferrari is more expensive than a FIAT.
- 2 A mountain is higher than a hill.
- 3 An adult is older than a child.
- 4 Lead is heavier than plastic.
- 5 Silk is softer than canvas.
- 6 Finland is colder than Greece.

exercise 4

1a The more complicated an exercise is, the longer it takes to do.

2c The harder you study English, the better you will speak it.

3f The higher the inflation rate gets, the more prices go up.

4b The older you get, the more difficult it is to find a job.

5d The more you eat, the fatter you get. 6e The less we use cars, the better it is for the environment.

exercise 5

- 1 Harriet's hair is much longer than Jane's.
- 2 My flat is a bit smaller than George's.
- 3 The War Museum was far more interesting than the British Museum.
- 4 She feels a little better than this morning.
- 5 Gina gets much better grades than Dave.
- 6 The jeans were far more expensive than the shirt.

exercise 6

1 the most common, 2 the prettiest, 3 the rudest, 4 the best, 5 the most interesting, 6 the most polluted

exercise 7

- 1 faster than
- 2 the longest
- 3 the best
- 4 the most intelligent
- 5 farther, the farthest
- 6 elder
- 7 better
- 8 the best
- 9 latest
- 10 thinner

exercise 8

1b, 2c, 3c, 4b, 5a, 6c, 7c, 8b, 9a, 10c

Unit 23

exercise 1

- 1 You read more than Tom.
- 2 Harry walks more than Joe.
- 3 Sam's father earns more than my father.
- 4 This suitcase weighs more than that one.
- 5 There were more people at Hannah's party than at Kate's party.
- 6 My TV has got more inches than my old one.

exercise 2

- 1 A puppy is cuter than a lizard.
- 2 A pure-bred dog is more expensive than a cross-bred one.
- 3 An elephant is heavier than a horse.
- 4 A snake is scarier than a rabbit.
- 5 A cheetah runs faster than a monkey.
- 6 The Siberian tiger is more endangered than a brown bear.

exercise 3

- 1 There are fewer lakes in Austria than in Belgium.
- 2 There are fewer bottles on this shelf than on that one.
- 3 That car has less damage than this one.
- 4 A minute has fewer seconds than two minutes.
- 5 I made fewer mistakes in the test than Linda.
- 6 Joanna took fewer photographs than Emma.

exercise 4

1 less money, 2 more coffee, 3 so many, 4 as nice as, 5 more money, 6 as tall as

exercise 5

(Open answer)

exercise 6

1 as, 2 than, 3 as, 4 than, 5 as, 6 than

exercise 7

- 1 not as handsome as Martin
- 2 as big as the one we received
- 3 as deep as lakes
- 4 not as good as Tom's
- 5 as tall as
- 6 was not as good as

Unit 24

exercise 1

1 was, 2 were, was, 3 were, 4 were, 5 were, weren't, 6 wasn't, 7 were, weren't, 8 was, was, 9 were, 10 were/weren't

1 was, wasn't, was, 2 was/wasn't, 3 were, was, 4 was, 5 were/weren't, were, 6 were, was, 7 was, was, 8 was, 9 was/wasn't

exercise 3

- 1 He was in Africa last year. He wasn't in Africa last year. Was he in Africa last year? Wasn't he in Africa last year?
- 2 Her mother and aunt were in hospital. Her mother and aunt weren't in hospital. Were her mother and aunt in hospital? Weren't her mother and aunt in hospital?
- 3 Dennis was away on an outdoor course. Dennis wasn't away on an outdoor course. Was Dennis away on an outdoor course? Wasn't Dennis away on an outdoor course? 4 The character in the play was very fanny. The character in the play wasn't very funny.
- Was the character in the play very funny? Wasn't the character in the play very funny? 5 It was a great holiday. It wasn't a great holiday. Wasn't it a
- great holiday? 6 Her friend was a marine biologist. Her friend wasn't a marine biologist. Was her friend a marine biologist? Wasn't her friend a

exercise 4

marine biologist?

- 1 Were they on holiday last August? No they weren't. They were on holiday last July.
- 2 Was he at the shop this morning? No, he wasn't. He was at home.
- 3 Were you ill? No, I wasn't. I was tired.
- 4 Were there any restaurants? No, there weren't. There were a few cafés.
- 5 Was your hair longer last year? No, it wasn't. It was shorter.
- 6 Were they born in Italy? No, they weren't. They were born in Switzerland.

exercise 5

- 1 Was the cake delicious? No, it was too sweet.
- 2 Was it fun? Yes, but it was too crowded.
- 3 Was the concert interesting? No, it was awful.

- 4 Were you bored with your relatives? No, it was fun.
- 5 Was it spicy? Yes, it was, but it was delicious.
- 6 Were they tennis shoes? No, they were basketball shoes.

exercise 6

- 1 What were the people like? They were friendly.
- 2 What was the hotel like? It was luxurious.
- 3 What was the weather like? It was very good.
- 4 What were the bedrooms like? They were comfortable.
- 5 What were the beaches like? They were very clean.
- 6 What was the sea like? It was warm.

exercise 7

- 1 Where were you born?
- 2 Why weren't you at school yesterday?
- 3 Where were you this morning?
- 4 How old was your father last birthday?
- 5 When was your last holiday?
- 6 Where were you last weekend? (Open answer)

Unit 25

exercise 1

1 arrested, 2 visited, 3 apologised, 4 listened, 5 underlined, 6 expressed, 7 showed, 8 happened, 9 asked, 10 questioned, 11 helped, 12 offered, 13 assisted, 14 quoted

exercise 2

1 broke, 2 brought, 3 bought, 4 came, 5 cut, 6 did, 7 ate, 8 fell, 9 found, 10 went, 11 knew, 12 made, 13 read, 14 said, 15 saw, 16 sang, 17 took, 18 told, 19 won, 20 wrote

1 told, was, 2 took, 3 read, 4 wrote, 5 caught, stole, 6 ate, drank, 7 cost, 8 taught, 9 sat, fell, 10 built

exercise 4

1 grew up, was, moved, 2 hated, decided, signed up, 3 spent, sank, found, 4 won, came exercise 5

(Possible answer)

1 spent, 2 stayed, 3 went, 4 drank, 5 came, 6 ate, 7 cooked, 8 posted, 9 bought, 10 danced, 11 found, 12 were, 13 left

exercise 6

- 1 Jack's mum sent him to bed early.
- 2 I went to the cinema last Saturday.
- 3 She had a shower this morning.
- 4 She went horse riding last weekend.
- 5 That baby cried all day yesterday.
- 6 She sat down after doing the washing-up.
- 7 I read in bed before falling asleep.
- 8 My dad made the coffee.

exercise 7

- 1 Did he lose his bags? Yes, he did.
- 2 Did you catch a cold? Yes, I did.
- 3 Did he understand his last grammar lesson? No, he didn't.
- 4 Did they spend their holiday in Holland? Yes, they did.
- 5 Did you stay at home last night? Yes, I did.
- 6 Did you learn English at school? No, I didn't.
- 7 Did the bus arrive on time? No, it didn't.
- 8 Did I answer the door? Yes, I did.

exercise 8

- 1 Who did she go with? Which cinema did she go to? What did she see?
- 2 Where did she learn it? When did she learn it? Why did she learn it?

- 3 Where did you see him? When did you see him?
- 4 Who did she walk with? When did she walk there? Why did she walk there?
- 5 Where did he fall? Why did he fall?
- 6 Why was she hot? How much did she drink? What did she drink?

Unit 26

exercise 1

- 1 He was having breakfast.
- 2 He was cleaning his flat.
- 3 He was searching online.
- 4 He was having lunch.
- 5 He was taking a nap.
- 6 He was preparing to go out.
- 7 He was walking to his friend's house.
- 8 He was having dinner.

exercise 2

- 1 Were the boys playing football? No, they weren't. What were they doing? They were playing golf.
- 2 Was Mr Brown teaching? No, he wasn't. What was he doing? He was taking a break.
- 3 Was she waiting for the bus? No, she wasn't. What was she doing? She was waiting for a taxi.
- 4 Was Tess singing? No, she wasn't. What was she doing? She was listening to music.
- 5 Was your mum working? No, she wasn't. What was she doing? She was visiting a friend.
- 6 Were they having breakfast? No, they weren't. What were they doing? They were sleeping.

exercise 3

1 were dancing, broke, stole, 2 was getting, started, fell, 3 did you damage, was running, were driving, didn't look, were going, 4

GRAMMAR PLUS B1

heard, went, opened, didn't recognise, wasn't wearing, 5 looked, saw, was planting, was, 6 was opening, blew

exercise 4

1 saw, was hurrying, 2 was making, fainted, 3 woke up, thought, was breaking, 4 are you using, fell, injured, 5 found, was digging, 6 saw, was driving

exercise 5

1c She did her homework while she was listening to her favourite music on the Internet.

- 2d John broke his leg while he was skiing.
- 3g I had an accident while I was going only 30 kph.
- 4b We were looking through your books when we noticed you have many.
- 5e Albert cut himself while he was shaving.
- 6h I was wondering what to do next, when the phone rang.
- 7f They were sitting in the garden, when it started to rain.
- 8a Two men were fighting in the street, when I called for help.

exercise 6

- 1 John had an accident while he was crossing the road.
- 2 When we arrived at the stadium, our friends were waiting for us.
- 3 The phone rang while I was having a bath.
- 4 He worked on his thesis until 1 a.m., when he fell asleep.
- 5 When the music stopped, someone put on another song.
- 6 Yesterday the children stayed at home while they were studying for their exams.
- 7 Mark and Lina broke a window while they were playing tennis.

exercise 7

- 1 What were you doing at 7.30 p.m. last Wednesday?
- 2 What were you doing at 10.30 a.m. yesterday?
- 3 What were you doing at 3 a.m. this morning?
- 4 What were you doing at 4 p.m. two days ago?
- 5 What were you doing at 8 a.m. last Friday?
- 6 What were you doing at 9.30 p.m. yesterday?

Unit 27

exercise 1

- 1 Jane and Harry have decided to buy a camper van.
- 2 Vera has passed her exams.
- 3 Have you seen John anywhere?
- 4 Has Nancy gone on a diet?
- 5 Has David called yet?
- 6 Janet has started her driving test.
- 7 I've just eaten lunch.

exercise 2

- 1 It hasn't snowed for ages.
- 2 He hasn't sent me an email since the summer holidays.
- 3 I haven't exercised for a week.
- 4 I haven't gone on a diet for months.
- 5 We haven't seen a good film since June.
- 6 We've never been to Africa.
- 7 They haven't come to visit us since last spring.
- 8 I've never gone to the gym.

- 1 Have you ever been to the Amazon?
- 2 Have you done any conservation work?
- 3 Have you travelled all your life?
- 4 How many times have you flown in an aeroplane?

5 Have you ever ridden a camel? 6 Have you ever held a snake?

exercise 4

1 He has been to the South Pole. He hasn't been to the South Pole? Hasn't he been to the South Pole? Hasn't he been to the South Pole? 2 They have known each other for a year. They haven't known each other for a year. Have they known each other for a year? (or) How long have they known each other? Haven't they known each other for a year? 3 She has won five tennis tournaments. She hasn't won five tennis tournaments. Has she won five tennis tournaments? Hasn't she won five tennis tournaments?

4 He has had an electric shock. He hasn't had an electric shock. Has he had an electric shock? Hasn't he had an electric shock?
5 He has got fined for speeding twice. He hasn't got fined for speeding twice. Has he got fined for speeding twice? Hasn't he got fined for speeding twice?

6 She has travelled in Asia. She hasn't travelled in Asia. Has she travelled in Asia? Hasn't she travelled in Asia?

exercise 5

- 1 I have repaired the table leg.
- 2 You have painted your house in yellow.
- 3 I have moved to Washington.
- 4 We have sold our flat in the mountains.
- 5 She has learnt English.
- 6 I've eaten.

exercise 6

1 has lived, went, 2 Did you wear, insisted, 3 wrote, 4 wrote, has just finished, 5 did he call, phoned, 6 Did you lock, 7 haven't finished, 8 Have you ever been, visited

exercise 7

- 1 It's the first time they've flown.
- 2 I've never seen this movie before.
- 3 I've told you to be quiet twice.
- 4 It's the first time we've been to London.
- 5 I've never eaten oysters before.
- 6 I've read this book twice.
- 7 It's the first time I've driven a Jeep.
- 8 He's never met her before.
- 9 I've called you three times.
- 10 It's the first time she's given them problems.

exercise 8

1 gone, 2 been, 3 gone, 4 been, 5 been, 6 gone

exercise 9

(Sample answers)

- 1 A British man has won singles title in Wimbledon.
- 2 A young girl has disappeared in North Wales
- 3 The Queen has welcome an official delegation from the United States.
- 4 Post office workers have voted to go on strike next week.
- 5 Actor Andrew Bridge died.
- 6 An explosion has occurred in Berlin.

Unit 28

- 1 He has been playing all afternoon. He hasn't been playing all afternoon. Has he been playing all afternoon? Hasn't he been playing all afternoon?
- 2 It has been raining for two days. It hasn't been raining for two days. Has it been raining for two days? Hasn't it been raining for two days?
- 3 You have been eating a lot of junk food lately. You haven't been eating a lot of junk food lately. Have you been eating a lot of junk

food lately? Haven't you been eating a lot of junk food lately?

4 Tony has been digging for a long time. Tony hasn't been digging for a long time. Has Tony been digging for a long time? Hasn't Tony been digging for a long time?

5 I've been driving for two hours. I haven't been driving for two hours. Have I been driving for two hours? Haven't I been driving for two hours?

6 Julia and Michael have been preparing for the party for a long time. Julia and Michael haven't been preparing for the party for a long time. Have Julia and Michael been preparing for the party for a long time? Haven't Julia and Michael been preparing for the party for a long time?

exercise 2

- 1 She has been peeling onions.
- 2 It has been snowing for three days.
- 3 You have been sunbathing too much.
- 4 Someone has been using my bike.
- 5 You haven't been sleeping enough.
- 6 He has been speaking for an hour now.
- 7 We have been living here since 2000.
- 8 You have been driving all day.

exercise 3

1 for, 2 for, 3 since, 4 since, 5 for, 6 for, 7 since, 8 since

exercise 4

- 1 How many cakes has he eaten?
- 2 How long have they been collecting rare paintings?
- 3 How long has it been raining?
- 4 Have you been waiting for long?
- 5 How long have you known each other?
- 6 How long has he been learning Chinese?
- 7 How long have you been jogging?
- 8 How long has he had a beard?

9 How long has Tom been driving? 10 Has your dad always worked at the airport?

exercise 5

1 I've lost, 2 have you been playing, 3 has stolen, 4 have started, haven't finished, 5 has been trying, 6 have been waiting, has forgotten, 7 has read, have you read, 8 has been sleeping, 9 has been hanging, 10 hasn't washed, 11 have been building, haven't finished, 12 has been selling

Unit 29

exercise 1

1 for, 2 since, 3 ago, 4 for, 5 since, 6 ago, 7 for, 8 for, 9 for, 10 since

exercise 2

- 1 I've known John since I was a boy.
- 2 We've worked on a very interesting project since last month.
- 3 Have you heard the news?
- 4 She's had problems with her neighbours.
- 5 She has had an argument with her best friend.
- 6 Why didn't you go to the doctor's?
- 7 I haven't seen a doctor since I retired.
- 8 What have the children done all day?

- 1 How long has he been working in a bank? He's been working in a bank since July. When did he start working in a bank? He started working in a bank in July.
- 2 How long has your sister skied? She's skied since she was a child. When did she begin skiing? She began skiing when she was a child.
- 3 How long have you been jogging? I've been jogging for 45 minutes. When did you start jogging? I started jogging 45 minutes ago.

4 How long have you been playing on the beach? We've been playing on the beach since this morning. When did you arrive at the beach? We arrived at the beach this morning. 5 How long have they been listening to music? They've been listening to music for an hour. When did they start listening to music? They started listening to music an hour ago. 6 How long have you been cooking in the kitchen? I've been cooking in the kitchen all the afternoon. When did you start cooking in the kitchen? I started cooking in the kitchen in the early afternoon.

exercise 4

- 1 I haven't been skiing for years.
- 2 It's a month since I last ate beef.
- 3 It's four years since they last went to a birthday party.
- 4 It's a long time since I last saw this film.
- 5 I haven't eaten chocolate for ten months.
- 6 It's years since we last went to New York.
- 7 I haven't cleaned this room for six weeks.
- 8 My mum last saw Louise 20 years ago.
- 9 It's a year since they last went to the theatre. 10 Our city hasn't held a large sporting event for fifty years.

Unit 30

exercise 1

- 1 They had left before she arrived. They hadn't left before she arrived. Had they left before she arrived? Hadn't they left before she arrived?
- 2 He had gone home when I phoned. He hadn't gone home when I phoned. Had he gone home when I phoned? Hadn't he gone home when I phoned?
- 3 They had eaten at that restaurant before. They hadn't eaten at that restaurant before. Had they eaten at that restaurant before?

- Hadn't they eaten at that restaurant before? 4 Cathy had had lunch. Cathy hadn't had lunch. Had Cathy had lunch? Hadn't Cathy had lunch?
- 5 The teacher had prepared her lesson before arriving. The teacher hadn't prepared her lesson before arriving. Had the teacher prepared her lesson before arriving? Hadn't the teacher prepared her lesson before arriving?
- 6 Lucy had stayed for the conference. Lucy hadn't stayed for the conference. Had Lucy stayed for the conference? Hadn't Lucy stayed for the conference?

exercise 2

1 had just gone out, 2 head eaten, 3 had just finished, 4 had already made, 5 hadn't seen, 6 had broken, 7 hadn't washed, 8 had just drunk

exercise 3

1 had been, 2 had opened, 3 visited, 4 didn't hear, 5 passed, 6 had started, 7 met

exercise 4

- 1 I had never eaten sushi before.
- 2 It was the third time we had been to that restaurant.
- 3 He had already invited me on a date twice.
- 4 It was the first time I had tasted octopus.
- 5 She had never told me that story before.
- 6 I had never been to the beach before.
- 7 It was the first time Kate had seen the monument.
- 8 It was the first time Mary had had a baby.

exercise 5

1 was, was, hadn't eaten, 2 have just finished, 3 left, was, was rushing, remembered, hadn't locked, 4 has been, 5 taught, preferred, was, 6 were, went, had never been, 7 opened, had forgotten, arrived

Unit 31

exercise 1

1 won't, 2 will, 3 will, 4 will, 5 won't, 6 won't, 7 will, 8 won't

exercise 2

1 Yes, I will. 2 Yes, I will. 3 No, she won't. 4 Yes, he will. 5 Yes, I will. 6 No, I won't.

exercise 3

- 1 I'm not sure she will email me.
- 2 I'm afraid they will be angry.
- 3 I hope I'll arrive before dark.
- 4 I expect he will go kite surfing.
- 5 I'm certain he will win the match.
- 6 I'm sure they'll travel by plane.

exercise 4

(Possible answers)

- 1 I think I'll walk.
- 2 I don't think I'll go by bus.
- 3 I think I'll call a taxi.
- 4 I don't think I'll go out for dinner.
- 5 I think I'll have something to drink.
- 6 I don't think I'll wait for them any longer.

exercise 5

1 unless, 2 if, 3 if, 4 unless, 5 when, 6 when

exercise 6

1d Where are you going to go?

- 2a When are you going to leave?
- 3f Who are you going to go with?
- 4b How are you going to travel.
- 5c What are you going to do?
- 6e How long are you going to stay?

exercise 7

1 I'll recognise, 2 am seeing, 3 is catching, 4 am going, 5 will find out, 6 will believe, 7 will have, 8 are you going to do, 9 will like, 10 am going to buy

exercise 8

(Open answer)

Unit 32

exercise 1

(Sample answers)

- 1 I looked up at the sky which was full of stars.
- 2 That man who just walked in the post office is my neighbour.
- 3 Joan, who looks unattractive with curly hair, has straight hair.
- 4 The bus I take to work, which is usually on time, was late this morning.
- 5 We're building our house that will be finished next week.
- 6 The woman who opened the door looked very old.
- 7 They gave us their phone number which we wrote in our address book.
- 8 I often go for a ride in the countryside which is 30 minutes from where I live.

exercise 2

1 who, 2 (that), 3 that, 4 who, 5 (that), 6 (that)

exercise 3

(Open answer)

exercise 4

1 which, 2 who, 3 who, 4 which, 5 which, 6 who, 7 who, 8 which

exercise 5

1 whenever, 2 wherever, 3 whoever, 4 whatever, 5 whichever, 6 wherever, 7 however, 8 whatever, 9 whoever, 10 however

Unit 33

exercise 1

1 What, 2 What, 3 Which, 4 What, 5 Which, 6

Who, 7 Which, 8 Who, 9 Which, 10 Who, 11 What, 12 Who

exercise 2

1 Who, 2 Who, 3 Who, 4 What, 5 What, 6 Whose, 7 Which, 8 Who, 9 Which, 10 What

exercise 3

- 1 What did he say?
- 2 Who did they see with your brother?
- 3 Which is your favourite restaurant in the city?
- 4 Whose is that car?
- 5 What has she broken?
- 6 Which is worse, this one or that one?
- 7 What did you spill?
- 8 Who turned on the TV?
- 9 What did they ask you?
- 10 Whose children are they?

exercise 4

1 what a, 2 how, 3 how, 4 what a, 5 what a, 6 what a, 7 what, 8 what a, 9 how, 10 how, 11 what an, 12 what a

Unit 34

exercise 1

1 he would like, 2 you'd never get, 3 I'd like, 4 John would get, 5 would they be, 6 would you pass

exercise 2

- 1 Bread doesn't rise if you don't bake it with yeast.
- 2 Plants die if you don't water them.
- 3 If you don't go to bed early, you're tired.
- 4 If you mix red and blue paint, you get purple.
- 5 If public transport is efficient, people stop using their cars.
- 6 Some animals bite if they get scared.

exercise 3

1 would never visit, 2 would be visiting, 3 would take, 4 would come, 5 would be taking part, 6 would you help, 7 would ask, 8 wouldn't buy

exercise 4

1e If I come over, will you drive me home? 2c She'll never lose weight if she doesn't start exercising.

3f I'll post the letter if you give me stamps.

4a We'll call you if we have the time.

5d My headache will go away if the children stop screaming.

6b If it stops raining, we can go out for a walk.

exercise 5

1 invite, will come, 2 want, will go, 3 look, will find, 4 lose, will contact, 5 will break, stand, 6 will be, tell, 7 will you buy, like, 8 will you do, isn't

exercise 6

1f If I spoke English fluently, I would to and live in England.

2d If I were you, I would go to the party.

3e If she were young, she'd learn to ice skate.

4b If they weren't leaving, we would order a pizza.

5h If he lent me his car, I would really appreciate it.

6g They would come to visit if they had time. 7a I would fall asleep if there wasn't so much noise in the streets.

8i If I had a date, I would cut my hair.

9j Sue would come to dinner if she didn't have to work late.

10c If you used the phone less, your bills wouldn't be so big.

1 knew, would write, 2 would buy, had, 3 won, would give up, 4 would translate, knew, 5 inherited, would you buy, 6 was, would go, 7 would be, went, 8 would travel, asked

Unit 35

exercise 1

1 can't, he, 2 hasn't she, 3 mustn't I, 4 have you, 5 doesn't he, 6 did he, 7 do they, 8 couldn't they, 9 weren't there, 10 will you, 11 didn't she, 12 is it

exercise 2

1 won't like, 2 is, 3 mustn't, 4 didn't know, 5 have come, 6 weren't, 7 couldn't, 8 had

exercise 3

1 hasn't he, 2 isn't he, 3 doesn't she, 4 can't she, 5 don't they, 6 doesn't it, 7 isn't it, 8 doesn't it, 9 didn't I, 10 didn't you, 11 can't it, 12 shouldn't they, 13 will you, 14 doesn't he, 15 can/will/would/could you, 16 shall we

exercise 4

1 No, I haven't. 2 Yes, he was. 3 No, I wouldn't. 4 No, they didn't. 5 No, I won't. 6 Yes, I do. 7 No, they won't.

Unit 36

exercise 1

1 see, 2 listening, 3 listening, 4 see, 5 listen, 6 hear, 7 listened, 8 see, look, 9 watch, 10 look

exercise 2

1 coming, 2 singing, 3 getting, 4 talking, 5 play, 6 practising, 7 breaking, 8 cooking, 9 coming, 10 shooting

exercise 3

1 heard, speak, 2 smell, burning, 3 heard,

partying, 4 see, leave, 5 saw, go, leave, 6 watch, fall, 7 hear, falling

exercise 4

1 I saw him leaving the flat at 6.30 a.m.

2 I watched him get into his car and leave.

3 I watched him drive for 5 km and stop at a hotel.

4 I watched him go into room 208 and close the door.

5 I heard him leaving the room at 8.30 a.m.

6 I heard him arguing with another man.

7 I saw the first man taking a package out of the suitcase and handing it to the second man. 8 I saw them shaking hands.

exercise 5

1 We saw a car being stolen.

2 I'd like to observe honey being made by bees.

3 I watched a nest being built by the birds.

4 Have you ever seen bread being made?

5 I love watching the grass cut.

6 I like hearing that song sung.

Unit 37

exercise 1

1 feeling, 2 starting, finishing, 3 watching, enjoying, 4 swimming, 5 boiling, 6 riding, walking, 7 wearing, 8 visiting, 9 buying, 10 getting, 11 going, 12 playing

exercise 2

1 I hate doing homework at weekends.

2 What about playing tennis this weekend?

3 I am looking forward to going on holiday.

4 After watching the film, Chris went home.

5 Are you good at using computers?

6 I don't mind eating Chinese food.

exercise 3

1 After brushing her teeth, she went to bed.

- 2 Before leaving the office, I checked that I had turned the lights off.
- 3 We can book a hotel, instead of staying at a B&B.
- 4 Besides being strict, my teacher is also impatient.
- 5 After doing the exercise, we studied the grammar rule.
- 6 He walked out of the room without saying a word.
- 7 After having dinner, he went out.
- 8 Besides being handsome, Michael Williamson is also rich.
- 9 Let's listen to some music instead of studying.
- 10 You can't organise this trip without contacting a travel agent.
- 11 After getting some money from the bank, I went shopping.
- 12 Before flying over the Grand Canyon, we visited the West Coast.

1 smoking, 2 saying, 3 doing, 4 thinking, 5 shouting, 6 waiting, 7 playing, 8 going

Unit 38

exercise 1

1 driving, 2 living, 3 doing, 4 forgetting, 5 buying, 6 complaining, 7 contacting, 8 eating, 9 watching, 10 making

exercise 2

1 to see, 2 to buy, 3 to finish, 4 to speak, 5 to sleep, 6 to buy, 7 to be, to talk, 8 to pay, 9 to pack, 10 to meet

exercise 3

1 to hurt, spending, 2 saying, to say, 3 going, to leave, 4 seeing, to tell, 5 to see, washing, 6 to stop, swimming

exercise 4

1 ask, to stop, interfering, 2 to arrange, 3 force, to do, 4 to allow, to do, 5 to start, looking, 6 to visit, 7 trying, to sell, 8 to sell, 9 to train, doing, 10 eating, 11 to go, 12 getting, 13 to revise, 14 to buy

exercise 5

1 to keep, waiting, 2 seeing, believing, 3 help, cooking 4 to go, to watch, 5 to see, working, 6 to work, 7 to go, 8 going, 9 looking, 10 arguing

Unit 39

exercise 1

- 1 He ordered me to stay here.
- 2 He reminded me not to leave the windows open.
- 3 He order me not to say a word.
- 4 He asked me to sit down.
- 5 He invited me to come in and have a seat.
- 6 He urged me to walk more quickly.
- 7 He warned me not to talk to strangers.
- 8 He suggested me to change my money in a bank.
- 9 He warned me not to answer him/her like that.
- 10 He told me to enjoy my holiday.

exercise 2

(Possible answers)

- 1 Don't go!
- 2 Is anybody coming to the pool?
- 3 Which dress should I buy?
- 4 Let me carry your luggage.
- 5 You shouldn't eat sweets.
- 6 Soon the work will be less difficult.
- 7 You shouldn't worry.
- 8 You have to leave immediately!

exercise 3

1 Tony told me that I could phone from his office.

GRAMMAR PLUS B1

- 2 The children said they were waiting for the school bus.
- 3 Liddy complained she couldn't live on her basic salary.
- 4 I told them they had made a terrible mistake.
- 5 Mary promised it would be a great party.
- 6 Ben grumbled that he hated getting up on rainy days.
- 7 My mum warned me that I was going to fall.
- 8 Lisa threatened she would phone the police if they stole her bag.

exercise 4

- 1 He warned me not to walk on the ice because it wasn't safe.
- 2 She introduced Kathy to Mr Smith.
- 3 Lucy offered to drive if Tom didn't feel like to.
- 4 Mary suggested to wait there until the rain stopped.
- 5 His mum protested he was a bad boy.
- 6 He invited her to dinner and she accepted.
- 7 John insisted on paying.
- 8 I gave the children some money and told them to go and buy some ice cream.

Unit 40

exercise 1

- 1 The children were treated to some ice cream.
- 2 The instruments were played beautifully.
- 3 Nothing was done until he came.
- 4 She will be met at the station.
- 5 You will have to be tested again.
- 6 Sally was given a lot of pocket money.

exercise 2

- 1 He's never been beaten at golf.
- 2 Everything must be read carefully.
- 3 I was very amused by his jokes.

- 4 This shirt must be ironed for tonight.
- 5 You shouldn't be seen by the others.
- 6 That question will be asked you for sure.

exercise 3

- 1 No one has watered the plants.
- 2 My company opened a new branch in Liverpool.
- 3 They will assign the Nobel Prize next week.
- 4 They say the new book is interesting.
- 5 Nobody has lived in this house for years.
- 6 The committee didn't accept the report.

exercise 4

- 1 I was asked a very interesting question.
- 2 They were told to hurry up.
- 3 What questions were you asked by the teacher?
- 4 This quiz can't be finished.
- 5 Tennis is played all over the world.
- 6 I was given flowers for my birthday.
- 7 The meeting was expected to start at 10 a.m.
- 8 These books should be returned to the library.

- 1 Shakespeare is said to be the greatest English writer of all time. / It is said that Shakespeare is the greatest...
- 2 Pollution is thought to be one of the biggest problems of the modern era. / It is thought that pollution is...
- 3 He is said to be guilty. / It is said he is guilty.
- 4 He is not thought to be a good doctor. / It isn't thought he is a good doctor.
- 5 First class mail is said to be delivered in 24 hours. / It is said first class mail is delivered in 24 hours.
- 6 A bomb is feared to have been placed in the building. / It is feared that a bomb has been placed in the building.

- 1 That story was given a lot of coverage by the news channels.
- 2 You will be given a call as soon as possible.
- 3 A bandage was put on my leg.
- 4 Some serious damage was done to the school by vandals.
- 5 Two televisions were stole in the burglary.
- 6 The student was presented with a diploma.

exercise 7

1 feed, 2 couldn't have made, 3 use, 4 will not accept, 5 was made, 6 stole, brought, 7 flooded, 8 bought, 9 do, 10 had stolen

exercise 8

(Possible answers)

- 1 Pupils must not play ball games inside the building.
- 2 Students mustn't run in the corridor.
- 3 Students cannot eat outside the canteen.
- 4 Students must wear their uniform.
- 5 Students cannot wear long earrings.
- 6 Students mustn't hand in their homework late.

General revision

exercise 1

- 1 There are six bananas in the fruit bowl.
- 2 Is there a printer in your office?
- 3 There are two cinemas in my town.
- 4 What time is it?
- 5 Amy and Katy are hungry.
- 6 Is your best friend Spanish?

exercise 2

1 a, an, 2 a, /, /, 3 an, 4 a, 5 a, a, 6 a, /, 7 an, 8 a, 9 a, a, a, 10 a, 11 a, 12 a

exercise 3

- 1 We sometimes cycle to school.
- 2 My brother hardly ever helps with the

housework.

- 3 Linda usually has piano lessons on a Tuesday.
- 4 They rarely eat pizza in the week.
- 5 We generally swim in the sea in the summer.
- 6 Marcus never does his homework on a Sunday evening.

exercise 4

Greek, German, Japanese, Chinese, English, Polish, French, Irish, Swiss, Welsh

exercise 5

(Possible answers)

- 1 You don't have to bring your passport.
- 2 You mustn't drive if you are not 18.
- 3 You needn't bring a sample of your work.
- 4 You mustn't unfasten your seat belt during landing.
- 5 You mustn't smoke in the toilets.
- 6 You don't have to bring/take a raincoat.

exercise 6

1 at, 2 on, 3 in, 4 on, 5 at, 6 in, on

exercise 7

1 some, 2 any, 3 no, 4 some, 5 any, 6 no

exercise 8

1 more expensive, 2 the nicest, 3 better, 4 the youngest, 5 bigger, 6 the most handsome

exercise 9

- 1 He has been married for six months.
- 2 She started ironing an hour ago.
- 3 They have studied English for two years.
- 4 I have known Rita for five months.
- 5 I started doing these exercises two hours
- 6 The baby began crying a long time ago.

exercise 10

1 that, 2 which, 3 who, 4 that, 5 who, 6 who, 7

whose, 8 who, 9 who, 10 which

exercise 11

- 1 What did you hear?
- 2 What did you wash?
- 3 What did you see?
- 4 Who did you talk to?
- 5 Who is she eating with?
- 6 What did you throw?
- 7 What did you eat?
- 8 What are you looking for?

exercise 12

1 haven't you, 2 doesn't he, 3 aren't they, 4 won't you, 5 did you, 6 does she, 7 aren't you, 8 were they, 9 can she, 10 hasn't it, 11 shouldn't he, 12 didn't they

exercise 13

1c, 2f, 3h, 4a, 5g, 6j, 7i, 8e, 9b, 10d